ББК 63.3 – 7

А 94

Countrystudy (for the 2nd year students). Mamlakatshunoslik kursi. O'quv qo'llanma. Samarkand – 2019. Sam DCHTI

Author: Ashurov Sh.S., Ashurova N.A.

Editor: Ruziqulov F.Sh.

The manual on ***Countrystudy*** is aimed todevelop the knowledgeand professional competences of English language learners, including philology students. Students are introduced to the culture, geography, history, literature, customs and traditions, and political system of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the United States of America and other English speaking countries.

Мамлакатшунослик фанидан яратилган ушбу ўқув қўлланма иглиз тилини ўрганувчилар, жумладан, филология йўналишидаги талабаларнинг билимларини, касбий компетенциясини шакллантиришга мўлжалланган. Талабаларни Буюк Британия ва Шимолий Ирландия, Америка Қўшма Штатлари ва бошқа инглиз тилида сўзлашадиган географияси, тарихи, таълим тизими, маданияти, урф-одатлари, адабиёти ҳамда сиёсий тизими билан таништириш учун мўлжалланган.

Учебное пособие по ***Страноведению*** направлено на усовершенствование знаний, умений и навыков и профессиональных компетенций у изучающих английский язык, в том числестудентов филологических курсов. Студенты знакомятся с культурой, географией, историей, литературой, обычаями и традициями, а также политической системой Великобритании, США и других англо-говорящих стран.

Reviewers: associate professor, Suleymanova N.M.
associate professor, Khusainova L.U.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I.THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND

1. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland – General information.....7

2. History of the United Kingdom revealed.....15

3. The major parts of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (I).....33

4. The major parts of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland (II).....48

5. The Government of the United Kingdom. The Monarchy.....61

6. British symbols. Political system and parties.....70

7. British Education system.....82

8. Mass Media, Economy, Sport in the UK.....91

9. British Customs and traditions.....106

CHAPTER II. UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

1. The USA – General information.....114

2. History of the USA revealed.....122

3. The Government of the USA.....137

4. American Education System.....147

5. Customs and traditions of the USA.....157

6. Mass Media, Economy and Sport in the USA.....167

CHAPTER III. OTHER ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

1. Australia.....179

2. New Zealand.....186

3. Canada.....195

TOPICS FOR SELF – STUDY.....203

TESTS FOR SELF CONTROL.....263

BIBLIOGRAPHY.....277

GLOSSARY.....279

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

ГЛАВА I.СОЕДИНЕННОЕ КОРОЛЕВСТВО ВЕЛИКОБРИТАНИИ И СЕВЕРНОЙ ИРЛАНДИИ

1. Соединенное Королевство Великобритании и Северной Ирландии - Общая информация.....7

2. История Великобритании.....15

3. Основные части Соединенного Королевства Великобритании и Северной Ирландии (I).....33

4. Основные части Соединенного Королевства Великобритании и Северной Ирландии (II).....48

5. Правительство Соединенного Королевства. Монархия.....61

6. Британские символы. Политическая система и партии.....70

7. Британская система образования.....82

8. СМИ, экономика, спорт в Великобритании.....91

9. Британские обычаи и традиции.....106

ГЛАВА II. СОЕДИНЕННЫЕ ШТАТЫ АМЕРИКИ

1. США - Общая информация.....114

2. История США.....122

3. Политическая система США.....137

4. Американская система образования.....147

5. Обычаи и традиции США.....157

6. СМИ, экономика и спорт в США.....167

ГЛАВА III. ДРУГИЕ АНГЛОЯЗЫЧНЫЕ СТРАНЫ

1. Австралия 179

2. Новая Зеландия 186

3. Канада 195

ТЕМЫ ДЛЯ САМОСТОЯТЕЛЬНОЙ РАБОТЫ.....203

ТЕСТЫ.....263

БИБЛИОГРАФИЯ.....277

ГЛОССАРИЙ.....279

MUNDARIJA

I.BOB. BUYUK BRITANIYA VA SHIMOLIY IRLANDIYA BIRLASHGAN QIROLLIGI

1. Buyuk Britaniya va Shimoliy IrlandiyaQirolligi - Umumiy ma'lumotlar..7

2. Buyuk Britaniya va Shimoliy Irlandiya Birlashgan Qirolliginingtarixi...15

3. Buyuk Britaniya va Shimoliy Irlandiya Birlashgan Qirolligining asosiy qismlari (I).....33

4. Buyuk Britaniya va Shimoliy Irlandiya Birlashgan Qirolligining asosiy qismlari (II).....48

5. Buyuk BritaniyaBirlashgan Qirollik hukumati. Monarxiya.....61

6. Britaniya ramzlari. Siyosiy tizim va partiyalar.....70

7. Britaniya ta'lim tizimi.....82

8. Buyuk Britaniyada ommaviy axborot vositalari, iqtisodiyot, sport.....91

9. Britaniya urf-odatlari.....106

II. BOB. AMERIKA QO'SHMA SHTATLARI

1. AQSh - umumiy ma'lumotlar.....114

2. AQSh tarixi.....122

3. AQSh hukumati.....137

4. Amerika ta'limi tizimi.....147

5. AQShning urf-odatlari.....157

6. AQShda ommaviy axborot vositalari, iqtisodiyot va sport.....167

III. INGLIZ TILIDA SO’ZLASHADIGAN BOSHQA DAVLATLAR

1.Avstraliya 179

2. Yangi Zelandiya 186

3. Kanada.....195

MUSTAQIL TA’LIM UCHUN TAVSIYA ETILGAN MAVZULAR.....203

TESTLAR.....263

ADABIYOTLAR.....277

GLOSSARIY.....279

PREFACE

The educational system has the task to train the students to cultural, professional and individual communication with the representatives with other social structure, social traditions and language culture. Therefore one of the main tasks of the educational program of teaching of foreign languages is introducing the students to foreign culture.

This manual introduces the history, geography, state system, educational system, customs, traditions, holidays of the United Kingdom and United States of America. These themes are very useful for mastering the English language.

The manual consists of three units where students can find information about the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the United States of America and other English Speaking Countries.

CHAPTER I.THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND

THEME 1. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland – General information.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1 Geographical position.

1.2 Population.

1.3 The climate.

1.4 Flora and fauna

1.5 Rivers and lakes

Keywords: The British Isles, English Channel, mild, temperate, Britons, diversity, native mammals, amphibians, native trees, The Thames, The Severn.

1.1.Geographical position

The United Kingdom, officially the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland but more commonly known as the UK or Britain, is a sovereign country lying off the north-western coast of the European mainland. The United Kingdom includes the island of Great Britain, the north-eastern part of the island of Ireland and many smaller islands. Northern Ireland is the only part of the United Kingdom that shares a land border with another sovereign state—the Republic of Ireland. Apart from this land border, the United Kingdom is surrounded by the Atlantic Ocean, with the North Sea to the east, the English Channel to the south and the Celtic Sea to the south-west, giving it the 12th-longest coastline in the world. The Irish Sea lies between Great Britain and Ireland. With an area of 242,500 square kilometers, the United Kingdom is the 78th-largest sovereign state in the world. It is also the 22nd-most populous country, with an estimated 66.0 million inhabitants in 2017.

Great Britain lies on the European continental shelf, part of the Eurasian Plate. Situated off the north-west coast of continental Europe, it is separated from the

mainland by the North Sea and by the English Channel, which narrows to 34 km at the Straits of Dover.

The territory of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is historically divided into four parts:

1) England; 2) Scotland; 3) Wales; 4) Northern Ireland

England borders on Scotland in the north. In the east it is washed by the North Sea. In the south it is separated from the continent by the English Channel. In the west it borders on Wales and is washed by the Bristol Channel and by the Irish Sea.

Scotland is the most northern of the countries that constitute the United Kingdom. It occupies an area of 78,8 thousand sq. km. Scotland is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the north and west and by the North Sea in the east.

Wales is a washed by the sea on three sides: the Bristol Channel in the south, the St. George's Channel in the west, and the Irish Sea in the north. Its territory is 20,8 thousand sq. km.

Northern Ireland occupies the north-eastern part of Ireland, which is separated

from the island of Great Britain by the North Channel. In the south-west Northern Ireland borders on the Irish Republic.

1.2. Population

The United Kingdom's 2019 population is 66.96 million according to the most recent UN estimates. Each year in June, the Office for National Statistics releases an updated estimate based on migration and fertility statistics. The last full UK census was carried out in 2011, showing a population of 63,181,775, up from 2001's census figure of 58,789,194. The UK is the world's 21st largest country by population. The United Kingdom is currently growing at a rate of 61% per year.

The United Kingdom includes four nations, England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland. Each nation has their own major cities that contribute to the population and demographics of the United Kingdom. London is the capital of the country, with 7,556,900 living within its boundaries. Glasgow in Scotland has a population of 591,620. Based on data from the last Census taken in 2011, the majority of the UK's population is situated in England, which accounts for just under 84% of the total population. Scotland trails behind with 8.4% of the population, followed by Wales at 4.8%, and Northern Island at 2.9%. The UK has a high literacy rate of over 99% among residents aged 15 and older. This is attributed to the universal public education provided to UK residents, both in

primary and secondary schools. The most used languages in the United Kingdom are the English, Polish, and Welsh languages.

The total fertility rate of the United Kingdom is 1.92 children per woman, according to data from 2012. The number of children born to foreign-born mothers has increased to encompass over one-quarter of the total population, and statistics from 2014 show that the fertility of foreign-born women living in the UK is higher than native women of child-bearing age.

49% of the UK population is irreligious (or has no particular affiliation with any religion), 17% is affiliated with an Anglican Christian, 17% with a non-Anglican Christian faith, 8% Roman Catholic, 5% Islamic, and 4% other beliefs. An interesting side-note of religion and the UK is that only Protestants may gain the crown of king or queen, and those eligible for the crown have only recently been allowed to marry those of the Catholic faith without losing their eligibility.

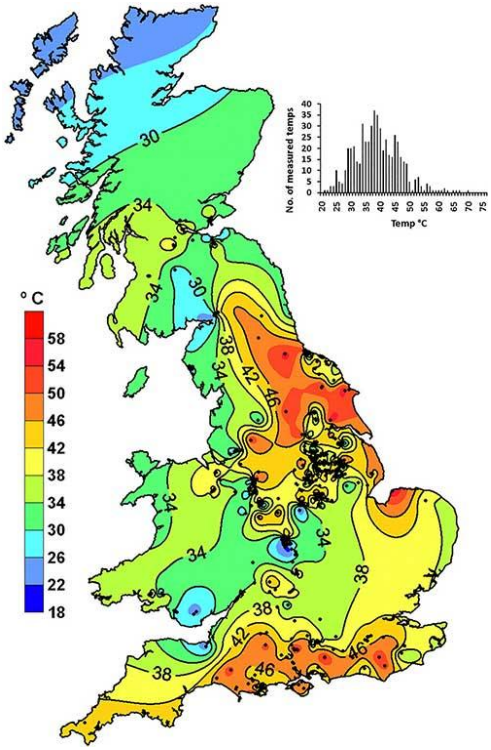
The United Kingdom's population is expected to continue its rise throughout the 21st century. Driven by modest natural increase and positive net immigration, the population will reach 77 million by 2050, according to the ONS projections. The UN projections for 2050 are slightly lower at 75 million.

1.3. The climate

The climate in Great Britain is generally mild and temperate due to the influence of the Gulf Stream. The south-western winds carry the warmth and moisture into Britain. The climate in Britain is usually described as cool, temperate and humid. The climate in Britain is generally mild and temperate due to the influence of the Gulf Stream - a warm sea current flowing from the Gulf of Mexico to western Europe. The characteristic features are not very hot summers, mild winters, frequent changes in weather, but few extremes of temperature, abundant rain all the year round (but on average, March to June are the driest months, September to January the wettest). More than one half of the days are overcast. Britain's weather is influenced by westerly winds blowing from the Atlantic, mild in winter, cool in summer, bringing rain and fog. Occasional

easterly winds in winter may bring a cold, dry, continental-type of weather. It seldom snows heavily in winter.

Rainfall is more or less even throughout the year. In the mountains, there is heavier rainfall than in the plains of the south and east. The driest period is from March to June and the wettest months are from October to January. The average range of temperature (from winter to summer) is from 15 to 23 degrees above zero. During a normal summer the temperature sometimes rises above 30 degrees in the south. Winter temperatures below 10 degrees are rare. It seldom snows heavily in winter, the frost is rare. January and February are usually the coldest months, July and August the warmest. Still the wind may bring winter cold in spring or summer days. Sometimes it brings the whirlwinds or hurricanes. Droughts are rare.



1.4. Flora and fauna

Animal diversity is modest, as a result of factors including the island's small land area, the relatively recent age of the habitats developed since the last glacial period and the island's physical separation from continental Europe, and the effects of seasonal variability. Great Britain also experienced early industrialization and is subject to continuing urbanization, which have contributed towards the overall loss of species. A DEFRA (Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs) study from 2006 suggested that 100 species have become extinct in the UK during the 20th century, about 100 times the background extinction rate. However, some species, such as the brown rat, red fox, and introduced grey squirrel, are well adapted to urban areas.

Rodents make up 40% of the mammal species. These include squirrels, mice, voles, rats and the recently reintroduced European beaver. There is a wealth of birdlife, with 618 species recorded, of which 258 breed on the island or remain

during winter. Because of its mild winters for its latitude, Great Britain hosts important numbers of many wintering species, particularly waders, ducks, geese and swans. Other well-known bird species include the golden eagle, grey heron, common kingfisher, common wood pigeon, house sparrow, European robin, grey partridge, and various species of crow, finch, gull, auk, grouse, owl and falcon. There are six species of reptile on the island; three snakes and three lizards including the legless slowworm. One snake, the adder, is venomous but rarely deadly. Amphibians present are frogs, toads and newts. There are also several introduced species of reptile and amphibian.

In a similar sense to fauna, and for similar reasons, the flora is impoverished compared to that of continental Europe. The flora comprises 3,354 vascular plant species, of which 2,297 are native and 1,057 have been introduced. The island has a wide variety of trees, including native species of birch, beech, ash, hawthorn, elm, oak, yew, pine, cherry and apple. Other trees have been naturalized, introduced especially from other parts of Europe (particularly Norway) and North America. Introduced trees include several varieties of pine, chestnut, maple, spruce, sycamore and fir, as well as cherry plum and pear trees. The tallest species are the Douglas firs; two specimens have been recorded measuring 65 metres or 212 feet. The Fortingall Yew in Perthshire is the oldest tree in Europe.

There are at least 1,500 different species of wildflower. Some 107 species are particularly rare or vulnerable and are protected by the Wildlife and Countryside Act 1981.

1.5. Rivers and lakes

Britain is well-provided with rivers. Most of the longest rivers flow eastwards because the west of the country is mountainous. Only few of the rivers are navigable far inland (e.g. the Thames as far as the City of London; the Severn; the Trent), but numerous canals enable inland traffic. The Manchester Ship Canal, connecting Manchester with Liverpool, was the first to be built (1894).

In northern Scotland, the Caledonian Canal connects a series of lakes with the North Sea and the Atlantic, The tides of the sea and the ocean raise the level of

water in the estuaries and enable even ocean-going ships to enter ports at some distance from the coast.

The Shannon in the Irish Republic (240 miles) is the longest river in the British Isles.

Lakes are to be found:

1) in the Lake District, a popular tourist centre in north-west England, including the largest natural lake in England - Lake Windermere, and one of the most beautiful lakes - Lake Derwentwater (called the "Queen of Lakes").

2) in Scotland, where they are called "lochs" - Loch Lomond, the largest lake in Great Britain, north-west of Glasgow; Loch Ness, world-famous for its "Loch Ness Monster", a very deep lake, in places over 700 feet (213 m), in northern Scotland, where it forms part of the Caledonian Canal; Loch Morar in the Scottish Highlands, the deepest lake (310 m); and many others.

3) in Northern Ireland and the Irish Republic, where they are called "loughs" - Lough Neagh, the largest lake in the British Isles (about 380 sq. km) is situated in Northern Ireland, west of Belfast.

🗐**Questions:**

1. Where is the UK situated?
2. How many countries does the UK consist of?
3. When was the Channel Tunnel completed?
4. When was the English Channel created?
5. What does influence on climate of Great Britain?
6. How many species have become extinct in the UK during 20th century?
7. What are the largest land-based wild animals in Great Britain?
8. How many vascular plants does flora comprise?
9. What are the rare species protected by?
10. What is the capital of Wales?
11. How many people speak Welsh?
12. What are the tallest species of the trees?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match statements (1-7) with their endings (a-g).

1. The United Kingdom's 2019 population
2. The most used languages in the United Kingdom are
3. Britain is
4. The Shannon in the Irish Republic (240 miles) is
5. The climate in Britain is usually
6. January and February are usually the coldest months

a. the longest river in the British Isles.
b. July and August the warmest.
c. the English, Polish, and Welsh languages.
d. is 66.96 million according to the most recent UN estimates.
e. described as cool, temperate and humid.
f. well-provided with rivers.

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. Southern Ireland is the substituent part of the UK.
2. Youth show the highest literacy rate of more than 99 %.
3. The most northern area in the UK is Wales.

4. It always snows heavily in winter in the UK.
5. The UK consists of 3 main parts, excluding Northern Ireland.

III. Fill the gaps

Enable, full, tides, mountainous, coast

Great Britain is _____ with rivers. Most of the longest rivers flow eastwards because the west of the country is _____. Only few of the rivers are navigable far inland (e.g. the Thames as far as the City of London; the Severn; the Trent), but numerous canals _____ inland traffic. The Manchester Ship Canal, connecting Manchester with Liverpool, was the first to be built (1894).

In northern Scotland, the Caledonian Canal connects a series of lakes with the North Sea and the Atlantic, The _____ of the sea and the ocean raise the level of water in the estuaries and enable even ocean-going ships to enter ports at some distance from the _____.

***Vocabulary*:**

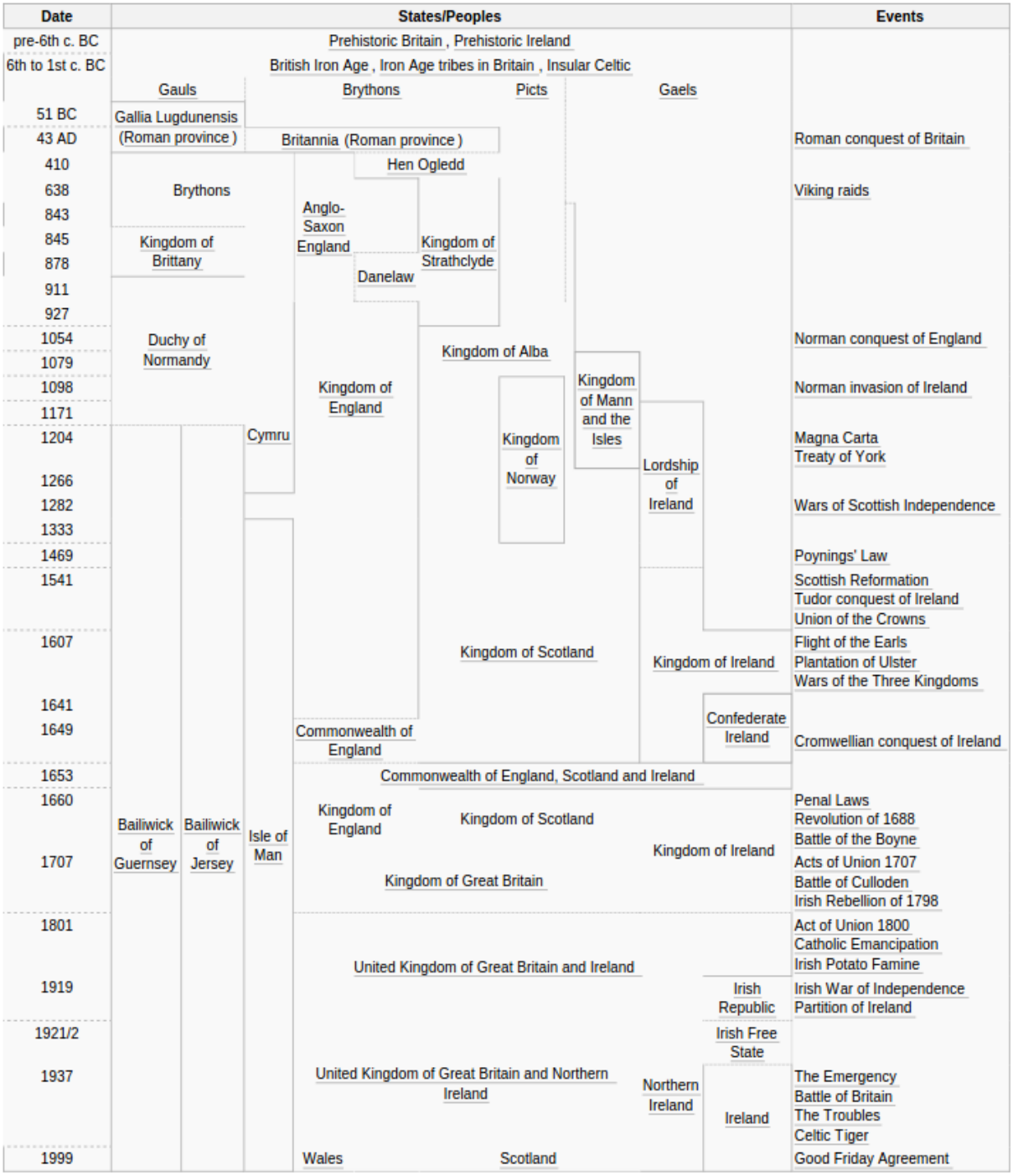
Buttercup – лютик – ayiqtovon
Daffodil – нарцис – nargiz
Daisy – маргаритка - dastorgul
Falcon – сокол - lochin
Finch – зяблик – sayroqi qush
Glaciation – обледенение – muzlash
Grouse – рябчик – kaklik
Heron – цапля – qarqara
Industrialization – развитие промышленности –sanoatning rivojlanishi
Orchid – орхидея – orxideya
Rodent – грызун – kemiruvchi
Urbanization – рост городов – urbanizatsiya

THEME 2. History of the United Kingdom revealed.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. History of the United Kingdom: The Anglo-Saxons
1.2. History of the United Kingdom: The Vikings
1.3. History of the United Kingdom: The Normans

1.4. History of the United Kingdom: 12 and 13 Centuries
1.5. History of the United Kingdom: 14 and 15 Centuries
1.6. History of the United Kingdom: 16 Century
1.7. History of the United Kingdom: 17 Century
1.8. History of the United Kingdom: 18 Century and the House of Hanover
1.9. History of the United Kingdom: 19 Century
1.10. History of the United Kingdom: 20 Century (Two World Wars)
1.11. United Kingdom: 21 Century



The timeline of British history

Key words: Bronze Age, Anglo-Saxons, the Vikings, the Normans, English royals, Lionhearted, Acts of Union, Bloody Mary, the Iron Lady, Elizabeth II, Great World War, World War II, Scottish Independence, European Union

RULERS OF THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND

Name	**Born**	**Ruled**[1]
SAXONS[2]		
Egbert[3]	c. 775	802–839
Ethelwulf		839–858
Ethelbald		858–860
Ethelbert		860–865
Ethelred I		865–871
Alfred the Great	849	871–899
Edward the Elder	c. 870	899–924
Athelstan	895	924–939
Edmund I the Deed-doer	921	939–946
Edred	c. 925	946–955
Edwy the Fair	c. 943	955–959
Edgar the Peaceful	943	959–975
Edward the Martyr	c. 962	975–978
Ethelred II the Unready	968	978–1016
Edmund II Ironside	c. 993	1016
DANES		
Canute	995	1016–1035
Harold I Harefoot	c.1016	1035–1040
Hardecanute	c.1018	1040–1042
SAXONS		
Edward the Confessor	c.1004	1042–1066
Harold II	c.1020	1066
HOUSE OF NORMANDY		
William I the Conqueror	1027	1066–1087
William II Rufus	c.1056	1087–1100
Henry I Beauclerc	1068	1100–1135
Stephen of Boulogne	c.1100	1135–1154
HOUSE OF PLANTAGENET		
Henry II	1133	1154–1189
Richard I Coeur de Lion	1157	1189–1199
John Lackland	1167	1199–1216
Henry III	1207	1216–1272
Edward I Longshanks	1239	1272–1307
Edward II	1284	1307–1327
Richard II	1367	1377–1399[4]
HOUSE OF LANCASTER		
Henry IV Bolingbroke	1367	1399–1413
Henry V	1387	1413–1422
Henry VI	1421	1422–1461[5]
HOUSE OF YORK		
Edward IV	1442	1461–1483[5]
Edward V	1470	1483–1483
Richard III	1452	1483–1485
HOUSE OF TUDOR		
Henry VII	1457	1485–1509
Henry VIII	1491	1509–1547
Edward VI	1537	1547–1553
Jane (Lady Jane Grey)[6]	1537	1553–1553
Mary I (“Bloody Mary”)	1516	1553–1558
Elizabeth I	1533	1558–1603
HOUSE OF STUART		
James I	1566	1603–1625
Charles I	1600	1625–1649
COMMONWEALTH		

Council of State	—	1649–1653
Oliver Cromwell[8]	1599	1653–1658
Richard Cromwell[8]	1626	1658–1659[9]
RESTORATION OF HOUSE OF STUART		
Charles II	1630	1660–1685
James II	1633	1685–1688[10]
William III[11]	1650	1689–1702
Mary II[11]	1662	1689–1694
Anne	1665	1702–1714
HOUSE OF HANOVER		
George I	1660	1714–1727
George II	1683	1727–1760
George III	1738	1760–1820
George IV	1762	1820–1830
William IV	1765	1830–1837
Victoria	1819	1837–1901
HOUSE OF SAXE-COBURG[12]		
Edward VII	1841	1901–1910
HOUSE OF WINDSOR[12]		
George V	1865	1910–1936
Edward VIII	1894	1936[13]
George VI	1895	1936–1952
Elizabeth II	1926	1952–

The United Kingdom, also known as Britain or the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, is a European region with a long and storied history. The first modern humans (Homo sapiens) arrived in the region during the Ice Age (about 35,000 to 10,000 years ago), when the sea levels were lower and Britain was connected to the European mainland. It is these people who built the ancient megalithic monuments of Stonehenge and Avebury.

Between 1,500 and 500 BCE, Celtic tribes migrated from Central Europe and France to Britain and mixed with the indigenous inhabitants, creating a new culture slightly distinct from the Continental Celtic one. This came to be known as the Bronze Age.

The Romans controlled most of present-day England and Wales, and founded a large number of cities that still exist today. London, York, St Albans, Bath, Exeter, Lincoln, Leicester, Worcester, Gloucester, Chichester, Winchester, Colchester, Manchester, Chester, and Lancaster were all Roman towns, as were all the cities with names now ending in -chester, -cester or -caster, which derive from the Latin word *castrum*, meaning "fortification."

1.1. History of the United Kingdom: The Anglo-Saxons

In the 5 century, the Romans progressively abandoned Britannia, as their Empire was falling apart and legions were needed to protect Rome.

With the Romans vacated, the Celtic tribes started warring with each other again, and one of the local chieftains had the (not so smart) idea to request help from some of the Germanic tribes from the North of present-day Germany and South of Denmark. These were the Angles, Saxons and Jutes, who arrived in the 5th and 6th centuries.

When the fighting ceased, the Germanic tribes did not, as expected by the Celts, return to their homeland. In fact, they felt strong enough to seize the whole of the country for themselves, which they ultimately did, pushing back all the Celtic tribes to Wales and Cornwall, and founding their respective kingdoms of Kent (the Jutes), Essex, Sussex and Wessex (the Saxons), and further northeast, the kingdoms of Anglia, Mercia and Northumbria (the Angles). These 7 kingdoms, which ruled over the United Kingdom from about 500 to 850 AD, were later known as the Anglo-Saxon heptarchy.

History of the United Kingdom: The Vikings

In the latter half of the 9 century, the Norse people from Scandinavia began to invade Europe, with the Swedes putting down roots in Eastern Europe and the

Danes creating problems throughout Western Europe, as far as North Africa.

Towards the dawn of the 10 century, the Danes invaded the Northeast of England, from Northumerland to East Anglia, and founded a new kingdom known as the *Danelaw*. Another group of Danes managed to take Paris, and obtain a grant of land from the King of France in 911. This area became the Duchy of Normandy, and its inhabitants were the Normans (from 'North Men' or 'Norsemen', another term for 'Viking').

1.2. History of the United Kingdom: The Normans

Settling in to their newly acquired land, the Normans adopted the French feudal system and French as the official language.

During that same period, the Kings of Wessex had resisted, and eventually vanquished the Danes in England in the 10th century. However, the powerful Canute the Great (995-1035), king of the newly unified Denmark and Norway and overlord of Schleswig and Pomerania, led two other invasions on England in 1013 and 1015, and became king of England in 1016, after crushing the Anglo-Saxon King, Edmund II.

During the 11 century, the Norman King Edward the Confessor (1004-1066) nominated William, Duke of Normandy, as his successor, but upon Edward's death, Harold Godwinson, the powerful Earl of Wessex, crowned himself king. William refused to acknowledge Harold as King and invaded England with 12,000 soldiers in 1066. King Harold was killed at the battle of Hastings and William the Conqueror become William I of England.

The Norman rulers kept their possessions in France, and even extended them to most of Western France (Brittany, Aquitaine...). French became the official language of England, and remained that way until 1362, a short time after the beginning of the Hundred Years' War with France. English nevertheless remained

the language of the populace, and the fusion of English (a mixture of Anglo-Saxon and Norse languages) with French and Latin (used by the clergy) slowly evolved into the modern English we know today.

1.3. History of the United Kingdom: 12 and 13 Centuries

The English royals that followed William I had the infamous habit to contend for the throne. William's son, William II was killed while hunting, although it is widely believed that he was in fact murdered so that William's second son, Henry, could become king. Henry I's succession was also fraught with agitation, with his daughter Matilda and her cousin Stephen (grandson of William I) starting a civil war for the throne. Although Stephen eventually won, it was ultimately Matilda's son that succeeded to the throne, becoming Henry II (1133-1189). It is under Henry II that the University of Oxford was established.

The two children of Henry II—Richard I "Lionhearted" and John Lackland—also battled for the throne. The oldest son, Richard, eventually succeeded to the throne, but because he was rarely in England, and instead off defending his French possessions or fighting the infidels in the Holy Land, his brother John Lackland usurped the throne and started another civil war.

John's grandson, Edward I "Longshanks" (1239-1307) spent most of his 35-year reign fighting wars, including one against the Scots, led by William Wallace and

Robert the Bruce. With the help of these men, the Scots were able to resist, as immortalized in the Hollywood movie *Braveheart*.

1.4. History of the United Kingdom: 14 and 15 Centuries

After a brief rule by Edward Longshanks son, his grandson, Edward III (1312-1377), succeeded to the throne at the age of 15 and reigned for 50 years. His reign was marked by the beginning of the *Hundred Years' War* (1337-1416) and deadly epidemics of bubonic plague ("Black Death"), which killed one third of England's (and Europe's) population.

Edward III was often off fighting in France, leaving his third son, John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster, to run the government. Later, John's son, Henry Bolingbroke, would be proclaimed King Henry IV (1367-1413).

Henry V (1387-1422) famously defeated the French at the *Battle of Agincourt* in 1415, but his pious and peace-loving son Henry VI (1421-1471), who inherited the throne at age one, was to have a much more troubled reign. The regent lost most of England's possessions in France to a 17-year old girl (Joan of Arc) and in 1455 the Wars of the Roses broke out. This civil war opposed the House of Lancaster (the Red Rose, supporters of Henry VI) to the House of York (the White Rose, supporters of Edward IV). The Yorks argued that the crown should have passed to Edward III' second son, Lionel of Antwerp, rather than to the Lancaster descendant of John of Gaunt.

Edward IV's son, Edward V, only reigned for one year, before being locked in the Tower of London by his evil uncle, Richard III (1452-1485). In 1485, Henry Tudor (1457-1509), the half-brother of Henry VI, defeated Richard III at the Battle of Bosworth Field and became Henry VII, founder of the House of Tudor.

Following Henry (Tudor) VII to the throne was perhaps England's most famous and historically significant ruler, the magnificent Henry VIII (1491-1547).

1.5. History of the United Kingdom: 16 Century

Henry VIII is remembered in history as one of the most powerful kings of England. He changed the face of England, passing the *Acts of Union with*

Wales (1536-1543), and became the first ruler to declare himself king of both Wales and Ireland.

In 1533, Henry VIII divorced Catherine of Aragon to remarry Anne Boleyn, causing the Pope to excommunicate him from the church. As a result, Henry proclaimed himself head of the *Church of England*. He dissolved all the monasteries in the country (1536-1540) and nationalized them, becoming immensely rich in the process.

Henry VIII was the last English king to claim the title of King of France, as he lost his last possession there, the port of Calais (although he tried to recover it, taking Tournai for a few years, the only town in present-day Belgium to have been under English rule).

It was also under Henry VIII that England started exploring the globe and trading outside Europe, although this would only develop to colonial proportions under his daughters, Mary I and especially Elizabeth I.

Upon the death of Henry VIII, his 10-year old son, Edward VI, inherited the throne. Six years later, however, Edward VI died and was succeeded by Henry's elder half-daughter Mary. Mary I (1516-1558), a staunch Catholic, intended to restore Roman Catholicism to England, executing over 300 religious dissenters in her 5-year reign (which owned her the nickname of *Bloody Mary*). She married the powerful King Philip II of Spain, who also ruled over the Netherlands, the Spanish Americas and the Philippines (named after him), and was the champion of the Counterreformation. Mary died childless of ovarian cancer in 1558, and her half-sister Elizabeth ascended to the throne.

The great Queen Elizabeth I (1533-1603) saw the first golden age of England. It was an age of great navigators like Sir Francis Drake and Sir Walter Raleigh, and an age of enlightenment with the philosopher Francis Bacon (1561-1626), and playwrights such as Christopher Marlowe (1564-1593) and William Shakespeare (1564-1616).

Her reign was also marked by conflicts with France and Scotland, and later Spain and Ireland. She never married, and when Mary Stuart tried and failed to

take over the throne of England, Elizabeth kept her imprisoned for 19 years before finally signing her act of execution.

Elizabeth died in 1603, and ironically, Mary Stuart's son, James VI of Scotland, succeeded Elizabeth as King James I of England—thus creating the United Kingdom.

1.6. History of the United Kingdom: 17 Century

James I (1566-1625), a Protestant, aimed at improving relations with the Catholic Church. But 2 years after he was crowned, a group of Catholic extremists, led by Guy Fawkes, attempted to place a bomb at the parliament's state opening, hoping to eliminate all the Protestant aristocracy in one fell swoop. However, the conspirators were betrayed by one of their own just hours before the plan's enactment. The failure of the *Gunpowder Plot*, as it is known, is still celebrated throughout Britain on Guy Fawkes' night (5th November), with fireworks and bonfires burning effigies of the conspirators' leader.

After this incident, the divide between Catholics and Protestant worsened. James's successor Charles I (1600-1649) was eager to unify Britain and Ireland. His policies, however, were unpopular among the populace, and his totalitarian handling of the Parliament eventually culminated in the *English Civil War* (1642-1651).

Charles was beheaded, and the puritan Oliver Cromwell (1599-1658) ruled the country as a dictator from 1649 to his death. He was briefly succeeded by his son Richard at the head of the Protectorate, but his political inability prompted the

Parliament to restore the monarchy in 1660, calling in Charles I' exiled son, Charles II (1630-1685).

Charles II, known as the “Merry Monarch,” was much more adept than his father at handling Parliament, although every bit as ruthless with other matters. During his reign, the Whig and Tory parties were created, and the Dutch colony of New Amsterdam became English and was renamed New York, after Charles' brother, James, Duke of York (and later James II).

Charles II was the patron of the arts and science, helping to found the Royal Society and sponsoring some of England’s proudest architecture. Charles also acquired Bombay and Tangiers through his Portuguese wife, thus laying the foundation for the British Empire.

Although Charles produced countless illegitimate children, his wife couldn't bear an heir, and when he died in 1685 the throne passed to his Catholic and unpopular brother James.

James II's unpopularity led to his quick removal from power in the Glorious Revolution of 1688. He was succeeded by his Protestant daughter Mary, who was married to his equally Protestant nephew, William of Orange.

The new ruling couple became known as the "Grand Alliance," and parliament ratified a bill stating that all kings or queens would have to be Protestant from that point forward. After Mary's death in 1694, and then William's in 1702, James's second daughter, Anne, ascended to the throne. In 1707, the *Act of Union* joined the Scottish and the English Parliaments thus creating the single Kingdom of Great Britain and centralizing political power in London. Anne died heirless in 1714, and a distant German cousin, George of Hanover, was called to rule over the UK.

1.7. History of the United Kingdom: 18 Century and the House of Hanover

When George I (1660-1727) arrived in England, he couldn't speak a word of English. The king's inability to communicate well with his government and subjects led him to appoint a *de facto* Prime Minister in the person of Robert Walpole (1676-1745). This marked a turning point in British politics, as future

monarchs were also to remain more passive figures, lending the reins of the government to the Prime Minister.

George II (1683-1760) was also German born. He was a powerful ruler, and the last British monarch to personally lead his troops into battle. The British Empire expanded considerably during his reign; a reign that saw notable changes, including the replacement of the Julian Calendar by the Gregorian Calendar in 1752, and moving the date of the New Year from March 25 to January 1.

George III was the first Hanoverian king to be born in England. He had one of the most troubled and interesting reigns in British history. He ascended to the throne during the *Seven Years' War* (1756-1763) opposing almost all the major Western powers in two teams, chiefly British against French, and ended in a *de facto* victory for the UK, which acquired New France (Quebec), Florida, and most of French India in the process.

Thirteen years later, the *American War of Independence* (1776-1782) broke out and in 1782 13 American colonies were finally granted their independence, forming the United States of America. Seven years later, the French Revolution broke out, and Louis XVI was guillotined. George III suffered from a hereditary disease known as porphyria, and his mental health seriously deteriorated from 1788. In 1800, the *Act of Union* merged the Kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland.

The United Kingdom during this time also had to face the ambitions of Napoleon, who desired to conquer the whole of Europe. Admiral Nelson's naval victory at Traflagar in 1805, along with Wellington's decisive victory at Waterloo, saved the UK and further reinforced its international position. The 19th century would be dominated by the British Empire, spreading on all five continents, from Canada and the Caribbean to Australia and New Zealand, via Africa, India and South-East Asia.

1.8. History of the United Kingdom: 19 Century

In 1837, then king William IV died of liver disease and the throne passed to the next in line, his 18-year old niece Victoria (1819-1901), although she did not inherit the Kingdom of Hanover, where the *Salic Law*forbid women to rule.

Victoria didn't expect to become queen, and being unmarried and inexperienced in politics she had to rely on her Prime Minister, Lord Melbourne (1779-1848). She finally got married to her first cousin, Prince Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha (1819-1861), and both were respectively niece and nephew of the first King of the Belgians, Leopold I (of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha).

Britain asserted its domination on virtually every part of the globe during the 19 century, resulting in a number of wars, including the *Opium Wars* (1839-42 & 1856-60) with Qing China and the *Boer Wars* (1880-81 & 1899-1902) with the Dutch-speaking settlers of South Africa. In 1854, the United Kingdom was brought into the *Crimean War* (1854-56) on the side of the Ottoman Empire and against Russia. One of the best known figures of that war was Florence Nightingale (1820-1910), who fought for the improvement of women's conditions and pioneered modern nursing.

The latter years of Victoria's reign were dominated by two influential Prime Ministers, Benjamin Disraeli (1808-1881) and his rival William Edward Gladstone (1809-1898). The former was the favorite of the Queen, while Gladstone, a liberal, was often at odds with both Victoria and Disraeli. However, the strong party support for Gladstone kept him in power for a total of 14 years between 1868 and 1894. He is credited with legalizing trade unions, and advocating for both universal education and suffrage.

Queen Victoria was to have the longest reign of any British monarch (64 years), but also the most glorious, as she ruled over 40% of the globe and a quarter of the world's population.

1.9. History of the United Kingdom: 20 Century (Two World Wars)

Victoria's numerous children married into many different European Royal families, the alliances between these related monarchs escalated into the *Great War* –WWI—from 1914-1918. It began when Archduke Franz Ferdinand of Austria was assassinated in Sarajevo, and Austria declared war on Serbia, which in turn was allied to France, Russia and the UK. The First World War left over 9

million dead (including nearly 1 million Britons) throughout Europe, and financially ruined most of the countries involved. The monarchies in Germany, Austria, Russia and the Ottoman Empire all fell, and the map of central and Eastern Europe was completely redesigned.

After World War I, the Labor Party was created in Britain. The General Strike of 1926 and the worsening economy led to radical political changes, including one in which women were finally granted the same universal suffrage as men in 1928.

In 1936, Edward VIII (1894-1972) succeeded to the throne, but abdicated the same year to marry Wallis Simpson, a twice divorced American woman. His brother then unexpectedly became George VI (1895-1952) after the scandal.

Nazi Germany was becoming more menacing as Hitler grew more powerful and aggressive. Finally, Britain and France were forced to declare war on Germany after the invasion of Poland in September 1939, marking the beginning of World War II. The popular and charismatic Winston Churchill (1874-1965) became the war-time Prime Minister in 1940 and his speeches encouraged the British to fight off the attempted German invasion. In one of his most patriotic speeches before the Battle of Britain (1940), Churchill address the British people with "*We shall defend our island, whatever the cost may be, we shall fight on the beaches, we shall fight on the landing grounds, we shall fight in the fields and in the streets, we shall fight in the hills; we shall never surrender*." And indeed, Britain did not surrender.

Following World War II, the United Kingdom was bankrupt and in ruins. The British Empire was dismantled little by little, first granting independence to India and Pakistan in 1947, then to the other Asian, African and Caribbean colonies in the 1950's and 60's. Most of these ex-colonies formed the British Commonwealth, now known as the Commonwealth of Nations. 53 states are now members of the Commonwealth, accounting for 1.8 billion people (about 30% of the global population) and about 25% of the world's land area.

In 1952, the current queen of England, Elizabeth II, ascended to the throne at the age of 26. The 1960s saw the dawn of pop and rock music, with bands like the Beatles, Pink Floyd, and the Rolling Stones rising to prominence, and the Hippie subculture developing.

The 1970's brought the oil crisis and the collapse of British industry. Conservative Prime minister Margaret Thatcher (b. 1925) was elected in 1979 and served until 1990. Among other accomplishments, she privatized the railways and shut down inefficient factories, but she also increased the gap between the rich and the poor by scaling back social security. Her methods were so harsh that she was nicknamed the “Iron Lady.”

Thatcher was succeeded in her party by the unpopular John Major, but in 1997, the "New Labor" party came back to power with the appointment of Tony Blair (b. 1953). Blair's liberal policies and unwavering support for neo-conservative US President George W. Bush (especially regarding the invasion of Iraq in 2003) disappointed many Leftists, who really saw in Blair but a Rightist in disguise. Regardless, Blair has impressed many dissenters with his intelligence and remarkable skills as an orator and negotiator.

1.10. The United Kingdom: 21 Century

Around the end of the 20th century there were major changes to the governance of the UK with the establishment of devolved administrations for Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. The statutory incorporation followed acceptance of the European Convention on Human Rights. The UK is still a key global player diplomatically and militarily. It plays leading roles in the EU, UN and NATO. However, controversy surrounds some of Britain's overseas military deployments, particularly in Afghanistan and Iraq.

The 2008 global financial crisis severely affected the UK economy. The coalition government of 2010 introduced austerity measures intended to tackle the substantial public deficits which resulted. In 2014 the Scottish Government held a referendum on Scottish independence, with 55.3 per cent of voters rejecting the independence proposal and opting to remain within the United Kingdom. In 2016, 51.9 per cent of voters in the United Kingdom voted to leave the European Union. The legal process of leaving the EU began on 29 March 2017, with the UK's invocation of Article 50 of the Treaty of Lisbon, formally notifying the EU of the UK's intention to leave.

🗐Questions:

1. When did the Romans leave the Britannia?
2. What was known as the Anglo-Saxon heptarchy?
3. How was a new kingdom founded in the start of the 10 century named?

4. What was the official language of England until 1362?
5. When did the Wars of Roses break out?
6. Whose nickname was “Bloody Mary”?
7. How long did ‘English Civil War’ last?
8. Who ascended to the throne during the Seven years’ war?
9. What did women forbid to rule in UK in 19th century?
10. What did British Monarch rule over 40 % of the globe?
11. Why did the UK grant Independence to India in 1947?
12. Who had the nickname of ‘Iron Lady’?
13. Whose children married into many different European Royal families?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match events (1-8) with given centuries (a-h)

1. **12th and 13th Centuries**
2. **14th and 15th Centuries**
3. **16th Century**
4. **17th Century**
5. **18th Century**
6. **19th Century**
7. **20th Century**
8. **21st Century**

a. The start of the legal process of leaving the EU
b. Boer Wars
c. University of Oxford was established
d. Edward VIII succeeded to the throne
e. Seven Years' War
f. The first golden age of England
g. The beginning of the Hundred Years' War
h. English Civil War

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. The creation of a new different culture was seen during the Bronze Age in Britain.
2. Richard I and John Lackland were the progeny of Henry II.
3. Henry VII is remembered in history with his Acts of Union with Wales.
4. In 1952, the current queen of England, Elizabeth II, ascended to the throne at the age of 26.
5. Queen Elizabeth II was nicknamed the “Iron Lady”.
6. In 2016, over a half of voters in the United Kingdom voted to be separated from the European Union.

III. Fill the gaps

Major changes; diplomatically; crisis; referendum; legal process

The governance of the UK with the establishment of devolved administrations for Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland saw _____ at about the end of the 20th century. It was followed by the acceptance of the European Convention of Human Rights. Playing a key role both _____ and militarily, the UK are leading role players in the EU, UN and NATO.

Financial _____ adversely influenced the UK economy in 2008. Later in 2014, there was a _____ which was held by the Scottish government on whether Scottish wanted to be independent from United Kingdom. However, more than a half of voters inclined to remain its part. The _____ of leaving the EU began on 29 March 2017, with the UK's invocation of Article 50 of the Treaty of Lisbon, formally notifying the EU of the UK's intention to leave.

Vocabulary:

fortification – укрепление – himoyalangan joy
to appoint – назначать - belgilamoq
unpopularity – непопулярность – mashhur bo'lmaslik
numerous – многочисленный – ko'p sonli
possession - обладание, владение - mulk
substantial - существенный; значительный - yirik
to remain - оставаться; находиться - qolmoq
tomurder – убийство *(предумышленное,совершённоесозлымумыслом)* – qotillikqilmoq
agitation - открытое обсуждение – agitatsiya; ochiqtarg'ibot
removal - смещение (*спостаит.п.*); устранение; удаление – o'chirish

THEME 3. The major parts of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. (I)

Questions to be discussed:

1. England

1.1. Geographical position

1.2. Climate and landscape

1.3. The main parts of England and population of England

2. Scotland

2.1. Geographical position of Scotland

2.2. Climate and landscape of Scotland

2.3. The main parts and population of Scotland

Key words: Cultural centers, extensive coastline, waterways, urban, steep rock, river and serves, royal apartments, Industrial Revolution, birthplace of capitalism, economic regions, torrential streams, outstanding market, Prince's Street, Straits of Dover, holidaymakers, Commonwealth immigrants, manufacturing.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is situated on the British Isles. The British Isles consist of two large islands, Great Britain and Ireland, and about five thousand small islands. Their total area is over 244 000 square kilometers. United Kingdom, island country located off the northwestern coast of mainland Europe. The United Kingdom comprises the whole of the island of Great Britain—which contains England, Wales, and Scotland—as well as the northern portion of the island of Ireland. The name Britain sometimes used to refer to the United Kingdom as a whole. The capital is London, which is among the world's leading commercial, financial, and cultural centers.

Other major cities include Birmingham, Liverpool,and Manchester inEngland, Belfast and Londonderry in Northern Ireland, Edinburgh and Glasgow in Scotland, and Swansea and Cardiff in Wales.

1. England.

1.1. Geographical position

The largest and the most densely populated part of the UK is England. It is washed by the North Sea, the Irish Sea, the English Channel, and the Straits of Dover. England is made up of about 65% of the island of Great Britain as well as the Isle of Wight and the Isles of Scilly. Scotland borders England to the north and

Wales to the west. The Irish Sea, Atlantic Ocean and North Sea surround England, granting it an extensive coastline. This contributes to its natural abundance, popularity amongst locals and tourists and transport system. England covers approximately 130 410 square kilometres or 50 356 square miles and has a population of just under 60 million people. The county Kent is known as the Garden of England because it produces a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are eaten all over the country. The soil and climate make ideal growing conditions. It is also the main area for growing another king of fruit called hops. You cannot eat them because they are very bitter, but they are an important flavoring for Britain‘s most popular alcoholic drink – beer! It is said that they also have medicinal properties, and local people sometimes put them in their pillows to sleep on as a cure for headaches! In the heart of England, about 112 miles northwest of London, is Birmingham, a city with over a million inhabitants. The growth of this city during the last century has been very rapid, for it owes its importance, almost entirely to its iron industry. Although it has no outlet on the sea-coast and does not stand on any great, river, it has become a busy hive of industry. The district around Birmingham is known as the Black Country. It is a land of factories and mines. Steam engines, gas-engines, motor-cars, railway carriages, rails, guns, bicycles, agricultural Implements, cooking utensils, carpenter‘s tools, screws, and nails are among the articles manufactured in the factories of the Black Country.

1.2. Climate and landscape

England makes extensive use of its inland waterways, such as its rivers. The Thames River, Mersey River and Tyne River are particularly important as they have formal ports in London, Liverpool and Newcastle respectively. When the tide is high, ships can travel along these rivers and into the ports. The Thames River is also the country's longest at 346 kilometres in length. The Thames River flows out into the North Sea. It is tidal in places, particularly in the area of London, where its levels can rise and fall by up to about seven metres. The river is fed by more than 20 smaller tributaries and is home to over 80 individual islands. Because it has areas of both sea water and fresh water, the Thames is home to a wide range of fauna and flora. In addition, this major waterway has supported human life for millennia. Water is essential to survival and the Thames' ample supply has provided ancient and modern cultures with a source of food and power. The Mersey River is important due to its having a port in the city of Liverpool. It is approximately 112 kilometres (or 70 miles) long and passes through the counties of Merseyside and Cheshire. Its basin measures 4 680 square kilometres, which

equals about 1 807 square miles. This river is made up of three major tributaries; namely the rivers Goyt, Etherow and Tame. Officially and according to modern definitions, the Mersey begins where the Tame River and the Goyt River converge.

*Climate.*England has a moderate marine climate that is characterized by mild winters and cool summers. January temperatures range from 3 deg to 7 deg C, and July averages range from 15 deg to 18 deg C. The temperature range is greatest toward the east. Rainfall varies from 510 mm near some parts of the east coast to 1,015 mm in the hills of the west and north. The highest rainfall occurs in the Lake District of Cambria, where in averages 3,290 mm at Seat Waite. Snow occurs widely in winter but rarely remains on the ground for more than a few dais, except in the hills. Humidity is generally high, and, fogs are common, especially in industrial areas where they may be compounded by air pollution. Spring is from March to May and is cool and dry. Noonday highs can become quite warm, particularly as summer approaches. However, snow is still possible, right up until the middle of April. Temperatures range between about 0 and 10 degrees Celsius during the English spring time. Summer. Between June and August, England experiences its highest temperatures. While this is the driest season, localised thunderstorms (usually in the southern, eastern and central parts of the country) ensure that the gardens are kept lush and green. The south eastern parts of England generally experience higher noonday temperatures, which reach around 30 degrees Celsius at the hottest, while most days average around 17 to 20 degrees.Autumn occurs between September and November and produces unstable weather conditions throughout England. Different pressure systems and cold air creates an increased amount of precipitation. Autumn temperatures range between about 1 and 13 degrees Celsius. The cold winter lasts from December until February. This is a very wet and windy season and snowfall is common in many parts of England. Temperatures can range from as low as 0 degrees Celsius to about 10 degrees Celsius, with very chilly winds. During late winter, when the Atlantic Ocean has cooled down, the climate stabilises, particularly along the coastal regions.

Landscape. The landscape of England is more rugged in the north and the west. The highest elevations are in Cumbria and the Lake District in the west. The highest point in England is Scafell Pike, 978m, part of the Cumbrian Mountains in North West England. The area of the Cumbrian mountains is the most rugged in England and is more commonly known as the Lake District after the many lakes there. Much of England is flat or low-lying especially in southern England. Mountains are found in the north. The Cheviot Hills are a range of low mountains forming a border between England and Scotland. They extend 35 miles (56 km) is a north-eastern to south-western direction. The landscape is determined mainly by the different types of rock underlying it. In the south, chalk has produced the gently rolling hills of the Downs, while hard granite is the basis for the mountains of the north and the high moorlands of Dartmoor and Exmoor in the south-west.Much of the land in England is flat (low lying) - less than 1000m above sea level, forming meadowlands and pastures and less than 10 percent of the area is covered by woodlands. Farmers raise animals or grow crops in the fields.

1.3. The main parts of England and population.

Historically England proper is divided into the following economic regions: the South Industrial and Agricultural region (the South of England), Central England or the Midlands, Lancashire, Yorkshire and Northern England.

THE SOUTH OF ENGLAND. This is the most important region in the country in terms of industry, agriculture and population. This region includes both the South East and the South West. Its northern border runs from the British Channel to the Wash. The South is a region of various industries and of intensive agriculture. The Southeast is the largest and the most developed region with London and the Greater London area as the major centers in the UK. The Southeast is a highly populated region of England. There is a lot of industry near the Thames and there are a lot of roads and motorways. London, the capital of the UK, and such historical cities as Windsor, Dover and Brighton are situated here. The Southeast is famous for its resorts, Brighton is, probably, the most famous of them. The Southwest is the region where the main activity is farming. The romantic past makes it popular for artists, writers and holidaymakers. The two principal cities of the region are Bristol and Bath. If you want to see the famous Stonehenge, one of the remarkable historic places in the UK, you should also come here. This is literally ―Land‘s End, the most westerly point of Great Britain. The peninsula used to be well known for its pirates. This part of the area is known for its extensive grassland, which is three times as extensive as the area under cultivation. The growth of grass is promoted by frequent rains and the mild warm climate.

CENTRAL ENGLAND OR THE MIDLANDS. The Midlands, known as the heart of England, is the largest industrial part in the country. The two famous Midlands cities, Stratford-upon-Avon and Oxford are connected with English culture: Stratford is the birthplace of W.Shakespeare and Oxford is famous for its university. The Midlands (or the Midland region) represent the largest concentration of manufacturing industry. Metalworking on the basis of local coals was the source of the ―Black Country development. The characteristic industries of the West Midlands are metallurgy (steel tubes and nonferrous metals) machine tool building, electrical engineering, and the car, carpets and pottery industries (with over 80 per cent of Britain‘s ceramic industry located in Staffordshire, around Stoke-on-Trent). Birmingham is the regional capital, a ―city of a thousand trades, including not only motor cars and bicycles but engines for aircraft

production. Coventry is the centre of the car and aircraft industries. In the East Midlands, Leicester is noted for hosiery and knitwear, boots and shoes and machinery for making these products, Nottingham – for lace and bicycles, tobacco and pharmaceutical goods, Corby – a new town – for steel industry (it was nearly condemned to death by the closure of steelworks by the British Steel Corporation). In agriculture, is important in the Midlands as a supplier of food for the local urban population.

THE NORTH OF ENGLAND. The North of England is very picturesque. The main attraction of the region is the Lake District, the cities of York and Newcastle-upon-Tyne. Many tourists come over especially to look at the ruins of Hadrian's Wall, a stone wall built by the order of the Roman ruler Hadrian to defend the North border of Roman Britain from Scottish tribes. The Ice Age formed many deep valleys in the counties of Cambria and North Yorkshire, made rivers into waterfalls and left behind hills and mountains. Beneath the earth is coal-the foundation of the regions industry. Cambria with its mountains and lakes is one of the most dramatic counties in England. The industrial NORTH-EAST is more dependent than other parts of England on traditional heavy industries- coal-mining, iron and steel manufacture, shipbuilding, shiprepairing and chemicals. Newcastle-upon-Tyne was the first town to export coal. Today it is the centre of the heavy engineering industry, particularly shipbuilding. Sunderland is another important shipbuilding centre. Newcastle (Newcastle-upon-Tyne) has the population over 200,000. It is the principle centre of the North East. Newcastle is known for its coal deposits, and ―to carry coals you Newcastle is justly considered ―to be suing unnecessary things‖. Together with Middles rough, which manufactures steel, Newcastle forms the backbone of the areas basic industries. Northwestern the river Severn, is Shoeshine, the birthplace of the industrial revolution. Iron bridge, where iron was first made, is a living museum. However, there is also a lot of Farming country, for example in the counties of Shoeshine, Worcestershire and Leicestershire. The moorland and hills of Staffordshire and Derbyshire are part of

the Peak District. This region has some beautiful countryside in the Peak District Nation Canal Park, the Cotswold Hill and the Malvern Hills.

LANCASHIRE AND YORKSHIRE. Two major industrial regions are situated to the north of the Midlands. They are Lancashire, which is on the western slopes of the Pennies and Yorkshire on the eastern side. Lancashire – the region to the northwest of the Midlands, with the largest cities of Manchester and Liverpool - is the centre of the cotton and related textile industries, chemicals of all kinds and textile machinery. Shipbuilding and repairing is also essential for the region. Lancashire is a historic centre of British industry, it is the birthplace of capitalism and it was here that the Industrial Revolution started. Yorkshire – the eastern neighbor of Lancashire- is separated from the latter by the Pennies. Amount three-fourth of Britain‘s worsted and woolen industries are found her. Leeds (709,000) is the commercial centre of the woolen textile area and has a large ready-made clothing industry. Sheffield (532.300) is a heavy-engineering centre famous for its high-quality steels, cutlery and tools. The area‘s extensive coal-fields provide nearly one-fourth of Britain‘s coal Here, from small scattered beginnings, arose the great industries which have made the words ―Sheffield, England‖ Famous throughout the world. For the people who for centuries have lived among the hills learned from before the days of Chaucer how to shape metal for the service of man; proud of their craft and zealous for its survival they passed on their knowledge and experience from father to son. It is this industrial concentration which makes Sheffield unique almond English manufacturing towns in allowing astonishing contrasts: For there is scarcely a street in the city‘s centre from which green fields and wooded hillsides cannot be seen. Few such cities can boast that grouse can be shot within their boundaries.

*Population.*Population of England is ethnically diverse. On the original Celtic population were superimposed the Romans: the Germanic Angles, Saxons, and Jutes: the Scandinavians: the Norman-French: and countless smaller groups. Many Scots, Welsh, and Irish have also settled in England. The most recent arrivals are the Commonwealth immigrants from India and Pakistan and the West Indies, who

are estimated to number about 4% of the population. In Europe, only the Netherlands is more densely peopled than England. The population is over 48 million. About 90% of the population is urban, of which about a third live in seven large conurbations: there are 89 cites with a population over 100,000. With over 53 million inhabitants, England is by far the most populous country of the United Kingdom, accounting for 84% of the combined total. England taken as a unit and measured against international states has the fourth largest population in the European Union and would be the 25th largest country by population in the world. With a density of 424 people per square kilometer, it would be the second most densely populated country in the European Union after Malta.

LONDON

London is a very old city. It began two thousand ago as a Roman Fortification at a place where it was possible to cross the River Thames, Around the town the Romans built a wall for defense. After the Norman Conquest there was a long period of peace, during which people began building outside the walls. This building continued for a very long time, specially to the west of the city, so that in a few centuries London covered a very large territory. London consists of three parts: the City of London, the West End and the East End. Today, aloe to many people live in the city centre, but London has spread further outward into the country, including surrounding villages. Greater London now covers about 1600square kilometers and suburbs of London continue even beyond this area. Some people travel over 150km every day to work in London, while living far away from the city in the country or in other towns. It is difficult to speak about the centre of London as one definite place. Actually, in have a number of centered, witches with a distinct character: the financial and business centre called the City, (spelt with a capital C), the Shopping and entertainment centre in the West End, the government centre in Westminster. Some placed on the outskirts of London have kept their village-like character. Modern London is not one city that has steadily become larger through the centuries: it is a number of cities, towns, and villages that have, diving the past centuries, grown together to make one vast urban

arcs. London is situated upon both banks of the River Thames; it is the largest city in Britain and one of the largest in the world. Its population is about 7 million people. London dominates the life of Britain. It is the chief port of the country and the moors important commercial, manufacturing and cultural centre. There is little heavy industry in London, but there is a wide range of light industry in Greater London.

2. Scotland

Scotland is the most northern part of the island of Great Britain. Scotland is divided into 3 parts: the Highlands, the Lowlands and the Southern Uplands. There are a lot of valleys and lakes in this region. The capital is Edinburgh.

2.1 Geographical position of Scotland.

The total area of Scotland is 30,981 square miles (80,240 km2), 32% of the area of the United Kingdom (UK). The mainland of Scotland has 6,160 miles (9,910 km) of coastline. Scotland's only land border is with England, which runs for 60 miles (97 km) in a northeasterly direction from the Solway Firth in the west to the North Sea on the east coast. Separated by the North Channel, the island of Ireland lies 13 miles (21 km) from Mull of Kintyre on the Scottish mainland. Norway is located 190 miles (310 km) to the northeast of Scotland across the North Sea. The Atlantic Ocean, which fringes the coastline of western and northern Scotland and its islands, influences the temperate, maritime climate of the country. The geomorphology of Scotland was formed by the action of tectonic plates, and subsequent erosion arising from glaciation. The major division of Scotland is the Highland Boundary Fault, which separates the land into 'highland' to the north and west, and 'lowland' to the south and east. The Highlands of Scotland are largely mountainous, and form the highest ground in the UK: they are bisected by the Great Glen into the Grampian Mountains to the southeast and the Northwest Highlands. The Scottish Lowlands can be further subdivided into the Southern Uplands, an area of rolling farmland and high moorland, and the lowland farmland of the Central Belt and eastern Scotland.

Rivers and lakes.

Scotland is endowed with an abundance of streams and lakes. Most lakes are long and narrow. Notable among the lakes, which are especially numerous in the central and northern regions, are Loch Lomond, the longest lake in Scotland; Loch Ness, which according to legend contains a sea monster; Loch Tay; and Loch Katrine. Many of the rivers of Scotland, especially those in the west, are short, torrential streams, with limited commercial importance. The longest river of Scotland is the Tay. The Clyde, which flows through the city of Glasgow and through the industrial heartland, is Scotland's most important river and serves as a transportation outlet to the Atlantic Ocean. Other important rivers in Scotland flow east and drain into the North Sea. They include the Forth, Tweed, Dee, and Esk. Scotland is demons for it beautiful large lakes with mountains, round them. They are not like the English ones: there are not so many trees and flowers, and green hills around them as in England. There are many rivers in Scotland, but they are not long.The longest and the most important Scores river is the Glide.

2.2 Climate and landscape of Scotland.

Scotland's climate is generally cool and very wet. The average annual high temperature is around 11 degrees Celsius (51° Fahrenheit). The climate is oceanic; however, the day to day weather can vary enormously and is very unpredictably. The east coast has a marginally more continental climate than the west, which has drier weather, sunnier summers and colder winters. The wettest parts of Scotland experience an average of 250 days of rain per year, whereas the driest parts only experience an average of about 150 days of rain per year. The average number of days with snow falling in Scotland ranges from 15 to 20 days, whereas on the peaks and mountains the average number of days with snow falling is about 100 days. Scotland is generally cloudier than England. The coldest parts of Scotland are the higher areas, with an average of only 1100 hours of sun per year. The climate of Scotland is temperate and oceanic, and tends to be very changeable, but not normally extreme. It is warmed by the Gulf Stream from the Atlantic, and given its northerly latitude it is warmer than areas on similar latitudes, for example Labrador in Canada—where the sea freezes over in winter or Fort McMurray, Canada—where −35 °C (−31 °F) is not uncommon during winter. Even though most of the country has a temperate climate, the northern islands and Highlands experience a type of weather close to the climate of the Faroe Islands or southern Norway. Scottish people sometimes describe weather which is grey and gloomy using the Scots language word dreich.

Landscape. In terms of physical geography Scotland can be divided into the Southern Uplands, which never rise to much more than about two thousand five hundred feet, the Central Lowlands, which include the valleys of the rivers Tay, Clyde and Forth, and the northern Highlands which are themselves divided by the Great Glen, which runs from fort William to Inverness. In this area are the tallest peaks, the highest of which is Ben, Nevis (4.406-ft high-about 1.342 m) in the Grampian Mountains. Scotland is a very mountainous country; there –fourth of the area of Scotland is occupied by mountains with a great amount of moorland, in which dew people live. In terms of physical geography Scotland can be divided into the Southern Uplands, which never rise to much more than about two

thousand five hundred feet, the Central Lowlands, which include the valleys of the rivers Tay, Clyde and Forth, and the northern Highlands which are themselves divided by the Great Glen, which runs from fort William to Inverness. In this area are the tallest peaks, the highest of which is Ben, Nevis (4.406-ft high about 1.342 m) in the Grampian Mountains. The Northern Highlands are sparsely populated but contain much of the most beautiful and loch, moorland, mountain and coastal scenery in the country.

2.3. The main parts and population of Scotland.

Scotland has a population of just over five million people of whom about one third live in the cities of Edinburgh, Glasgow, Aberdeen and Dundee. Glasgow (715,600) is Scot lands most population city and third largest in the British Isles. It stands at the lowest bridging point on the river Clyde and thus become the outstanding market centre for western Scotland, and commercially and industrially dominates Clyde side. All the inhabitants speak English although about 100.000 still speak Scottish Gaelic. The population of Scotland in the 2011 census was 5,295,400, the highest ever recorded. The most recent ONS estimate, for mid-2017, was 5,424,800. 62% of Scotland's population stated their national identity as 'Scottish only', 18% as 'Scottish and British', 8% as 'British only', and 4% chose 'other identity only'. Although Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland, the largest city is Glasgow, which has just over 584,000 inhabitants. The Greater Glasgow conurbation, with a population of almost 1.2 million, is home to nearly a quarter of Scotland's population. The Central Belt is where most of the main towns and cities are located, including Glasgow, Edinburgh, Dundee, and Perth. Scotland's only major city outside the Central Belt is Aberdeen.] Because of housing problems in Glasgow and Edinburgh, five new towns were designated between 1947 and 1966. They are East Kilbride, Glenrothes, Cumbernauld, Livingston, and Irvine.

EDINBURGH. Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland, is one of the most beautiful cities in Europe, full of historical monuments of great interest. The dominating feature of the city is the Castle, standing high on a steep rock. It is in the royal

apartments of the Castle that the son of marry Queen of Scots, the future King James I, was born. The Royal Palace of Holly rood House, which is the official residence of the present queen of England, Elizabeth II, when she comes on a visit to Scotland, is also associated with the memory of Mary Stuart. The finest street in Edinburgh and the main shopping area is Prince‘s Street. In the gardens on its south side stands the monument of Walter Scott, the famous writer of historical novels. Beyond the Scott monument, at the food of the Castle, is the National Gallery of Scotland. To the north of Edinburgh is the Firth of Forth. The Forth Bridge, which goes across it, is one of the great engineering achievements of the world. Edinburgh University, which was founded in 1582, is famous for its medical faculty. Edinburgh is also an important centre of cultural life, and each year, in late August and early September, it produces a festival of music and drama, which is famous all over the world. The name “Edinburgh” is rumoured to originate from the old English of “Edwin’s fort”, referring to the 7th century King Edwin of Northumbria (and “burgh” means “fortress” or “walled collection of buildings”). However, the name probably preceded King Edwin so this is unlikely to be true. In 600 A.D. Edinburgh was referred to in the form “Din Eidyn” or “Fort of Eidyn”, when the settlement was a Gododdin hillfort. The city is also affectionately named by the Scottish as “Auld Reekie” (Reekie meaning “Smoky”), referring to the pollution from coal and wood fires that left dark smoky trails from chimneys through the Edinburgh skies. It has also been named “Auld Greekie” or the Athens of the North due to its topography; the Old Town plays a role similar to that of the Athenian Acropolis. “Auld Greekie” also refers to Edinburgh’s role as Scotland’s intellectual and cultural centre. While most cities expanded and developed heavy industries during the industrial revolution, the expansion in the Forth region happened at Leith, leaving Edinburgh relatively untouched and confined.

🗐**Questions:**

1. How many parts are there in England?

2. What kind of climate does England have?
3. How many people live in England?
4. Describe the landscape of England.
5. When was Scotland united with England?
6. How many parts are there in Scotland?
7. What kind of climate does Scotland have?
8. How many people live in Scotland?
9. What is the difference between the landscape of England and Scotland?
10. Where is the Castle located?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match words (1-8) with given sentences (a-h).

1. Their total area a. 130 410 square kilometres
2. England covers approximately b. is over 244 000 square kilometres
3. London c. the capital of Scotland
4. Edinburgh d. is a very old city
5. Two major industrial regions e. the eastern neighbor of Lancashire
6. Yorkshire f. are situated to the north of the Midlands

g. the most beautiful cities in Europe

h. is about 7 million people

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage).

1. England has a moderate marine climate that is characterized by mild winters and cool summers.
2. England has a population of just under 50 million people.
3. The Southeast is a highly populated region of England.
4. The total area of Scotland is 40,981 square miles.
5. Scotland's climate is generally cool and very wet.
6. Scotland has a population of just over six million people.

III. Fill in the gaps with given words.

Wales, extensive coastline, residence, North sea, monuments, steep rock

England is the largest and the most densely populated part of the UK is England. It is washed by the_____, the Irish sea, the English Channel, and the Straits of Dover. England is made up of about 65% of the island of Great Britain as well as the Isle of Wight and the Isles of Scilly. Scotland borders England to the north and _____to the west. The Irish Sea, Atlantic Ocean and North Sea surround England, granting it an_____. This contributes to its natural abundance, popularity amongst locals and tourists and transport system. England covers approximately 130 410 square kilometres or 50 356 square miles and has a population of just under 60 million people.

Edinburgh is the capital of Scotland, is one of the most beautiful cities in Europe, full of historical _____of great interest. The dominating feature of the city is the Castle, standing high on a_____. It is in the royal apartments of the Castle that the son of marry Queen of Scots, the future King James I, was born. The Royal Palace of Holly rood House, which is the official _____of the present queen of England, Elizabeth II, when she comes on a visit to Scotland, is also associated with the memory of Mary Stuart.

Vocabulary:

industrial-промышленный-sanoat
feature-особенность-xususiyat
seashore-морскойберег-dengiz sohilida joylashgan
upland-нагорный-tepalik
superimposed-наложенный-qo’shilgan
dominating-доминирование-hukmron
defense-защита-himoya
moorland-местность-joy
coastal-береговой-qirg’oq
to cultivate-выращивать-etishtirish
coniferous-хвойный-ignabargli
variability-изменчивость-uzgaruvchanlik
moisture-влажность-namlik
remarkable-замечательный-diqqatga sazovor
to estimate-оценивать-baholash

THEME 4. The major parts of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. (II)

Questions to be discussed:

1. Wales

1.1.Geographical position

1.2. Climate and landscape

1.3.Main parts of Wales and population

2. Northern Ireland

2.1. Geographical position

2.2. Climate and landscape of Northern Ireland

2.3 Population of Northern Ireland

Key words: geography, population, land, hills, mountains, forests, soil, fauna, flora, temperature, climate, heat, cold, ethnics

1. *Wales.*

Wales, constituent unit of the United Kingdom that forms a westward extension of the island of Great Britain. The capital and main commercial and financial centre is Cardiff.

Famed for its strikingly rugged landscape, the small nation of Wales—which comprises six distinctive regions—was one of Celtic Europe's most prominent political and cultural centres, and it retains aspects of culture that are markedly different from those of its English neighbours.

The medieval chronicler Giraldus Cambrensis (Gerald of Wales) had topography, history, and current events alike in mind when he observed that Wales is a "country very strongly defended by high mountains, deep valleys, extensive woods, rivers, and marshes; insomuch that from the time the Saxons took possession of the island the remnants of the Britons, retiring into these regions, could never be entirely subdued either by the English or by the Normans." In time, however, Wales was in fact subdued and, by the Act of Union of 1536, formally

joined to the kingdom of England. Welsh engineers, linguists, musicians, writers, and soldiers went on to make significant contributions to the development of the larger British Empire even as many of their compatriots laboured at home to preserve cultural traditions and even the Welsh language itself, which enjoyed a revival in the late 20th century. In 1997 the British government, with the support of the Welsh electorate, provided Wales with a measure of autonomy through the creation of the Welsh Assembly, which assumed decision-making authority for most local matters.

Although Wales was shaken by the decline of its industrial mainstay, coal mining, by the end of the 20th century the country had developed a diversified economy, particularly in the cities of Cardiff and Swansea, while the countryside, once reliant on small farming, drew many retirees from England. Tourism became an economic staple, with visitors—including many descendants of Welsh expatriates—drawn to Wales's stately parks and castles as well as to cultural events highlighting the country's celebrated musical and literary traditions. In the face of constant change, Wales continues to seek both greater independence and a distinct place in an integrated Europe.

Cardiff is the largest city of Wales. It is also became first ever official capital of Wales.

1.1. Geographical position of Wales

Wales is bounded by the Dee estuary and Liverpool Bay to the north, the Irish Sea to the west, the Severn estuary and the Bristol Channel to the south, and England to the east. Anglesey the largest island in England and Wales, lies off the northwestern coast and is linked to the mainland by road and rail bridges. The varied coastline of Wales measures about 600 miles. The country stretches some 130 miles from north to south, and its east-west width varies, reaching 90 miles across in the north, narrowing to about 40 miles in the centre, and widening again to more than 100 miles across the southern portion.

Wales consists of six traditional regions—the rugged central heartland, the North Wales lowlands and Isle of Anglesey county, the Cardigan coast (Ceredigion county), the southwestern lowlands, industrial South Wales, and the Welsh borderland.

1.2. Climate and landscape

Wales has a maritime climate dominated by highly unpredictable shifts in Atlantic air masses, which, combined with the diverse range of elevations, often cause local conditions to vary considerably from day to day. Precipitation is frequent and often more than adequate, with annual totals averaging 55 inches (1,385 mm) for the country as a whole. There is no markedly wet or dry season; roughly 4 inches (88 mm) of precipitation are recorded in April, whereas 6 inches (142 mm) are typical in January. Winter snowfall can be significant in the uplands, where snow or sleet falls some 10 days of each year. The mean diurnal temperature is 50 °F (10 °C), ranging from 40 °F (4 °C) in January to 61 °F (16 °C) in July and August.

Flora and fauna

The combination of physical conditions and centuries of human activity in Wales has brought about a predominance of grasslands, varying from mountain grasses and heather to lowland pastures of bent grass (Agrostis) and ryegrass. Planted woodlands are also common, including mixed parkland, boundary woods, and commercial plantations.

The remoter parts of Wales shelter some mammals and birds that are extinct or rarely found elsewhere in Britain, including European polecats and pine martens,

red kites, and choughs (crowlike birds that breed inland as well as at some coastal sites). Seabirds and shorebirds occur in large numbers, and bottlenose dolphins inhabit Cardigan Bay. There are three designated national parks in Wales—Snowdonia, Pembroke shire Coast, and Brecon Beacons—and five areas of outstanding natural beauty—Gower, Lleyn, the Isle of Anglesey, the Clwydian Range, and the Wye valley.

1.3 Main parts and population of Wales

The Industrial Revolution dramatically increased the Welsh population from around 500,000 people in the mid-18th century to some 2,600,000 by 1921. In the 1890s alone roughly 130,000 migrants were drawn into the coalfields of South Wales from England, Ireland, Spain, Italy, and elsewhere; many people from rural areas in Wales also migrated to industrial centres. Although new manufacturers and mines provided employment for many Welsh workers, others emigrated, particularly to the northeastern United States. Heavy industry declined during the 20th century, and agriculture became increasingly commercialized and capital-intensive, producing further emigration from Wales, mainly of younger workers, and leaving behind a disproportionately aged population. In the late 20th century new industrial growth stemmed the population loss, except in South Wales and other coalfield regions. There is now a rough balance between inward and outward migration; however, many of the more recent arrivals have been seasonal vacationers or rural retreaters from metropolitan England, which has produced considerable tensions in traditionally Welsh-speaking areas where up to half the population was born outside Wales. In contrast, nonnatives account for less than one-tenth of the residents of some southern districts. Many African seamen were attracted to South Wales during the industrial boom of the late 19th century, but people of African ancestry now account for only a tiny fraction of Wales's total population. Cardiff is home to one of the oldest black communities in Britain.

The latest estimate for the population of Wales (Cymru) comes from the Office of National Statistics, who reported in 2018 that the population had passed three

million for the first time. To be precise, they estimated that, in mid-2018, 3,006,400 people lived in Wales.

The 2008 census reported that Wales' population was 2,903,085, so this represents an increase of just over 100,000 people in a decade. The results of the 2018 census showed a population of 3,063,456.

There are two official languages in Wales – English and Welsh.

The 2001 census recorded that 20.8% of people in Wales can speak Welsh to some degree. Other surveys put the number of Welsh speakers in Wales at a slightly higher level. Promotion of the language by the Welsh Assembly Government, combined with legal protection, have led to an increase in the number of Welsh speakers over the past few decades and it is likely that the 2011 census will report a further increase in usage.

CARDIFF. Cardiff is the largest city of Wales. It is also became first ever official capital of Wales. Cardiff is the 10th largest city in UK. Cardiff is a significant tourist destination and most popular visitor destination of Wales. Cardiff is located on the south coast of Wales. Summer is the best time to visit as the city hosts large festivals.
Cardiff is located on the south coast of Wales. The city has a total area of 54.2 sq mi (140.3 sq km) with about 29.24 sq mi (75.72 sq km) of urban area. Cardiff has a population of about 346,100 (2011 estimates) and a population density of 6,400/sq mi (2,500/sq km). The center part of Cardiff is flat and is surrounded with hills on the east, north and west outskirts. Cardiff has the world's largest coal port. The highest point in the city is Garth Hill which is 307 meters above the sea level. Cardiff has a maritime climate and is located within the North Temperate Zone. The city has mild weather that is often cloudy, wet and windy. The summer months are warm and sunny with average maximum temperatures between 19 °C (66 °F) and 22 °C (72 °F). The winter months are quite wet, but rainfall is rarely excessive and the temperature usually stays above freezing point. Spring and autumn months have temperatures above 14 °C (57 °F). Rain is unpredictable at any time of year.

2. ***Northern Ireland***

Northern Ireland, part of the United Kingdom, lying in the northeastern quadrant of the island of Ireland, on the western continental periphery often characterized as Atlantic Europe. Northern Ireland is sometimes referred to as Ulster, although it includes only six of the nine counties which made up that historic Irish province.

In proximity to Scotland and to sea channels leading to England and Wales, Northern Ireland has long witnessed generations of newcomers and emigrants, including Celts from continental Europe and Vikings, Normans, and Anglo-Saxons. In the 17th century, the period of the so-called Ulster plantation, thousands of Scottish Presbyterians were forcibly resettled and English military garrisons built, arrivals that would institutionalize the ethnic, religious, and political differences that eventually resulted in violent conflict.

Since the 1920s, when Northern Ireland was officially separated from Ireland, it has been tormented by sectarian violence. Notwithstanding the peacemaking efforts that began in earnest in the mid-1990s, Northern Ireland is still best navigated by those who are skilled in the shibboleths and cultural codes that demarcate its peoples, governing which football (soccer) team to cheer for, which whiskey to drink, and which song to sing. The complexity of those political markers is captured in a graffito once scrawled on Belfast walls that read “If you are not confused you don’t understand the situation.” But, Northern Ireland’s political fortunes subsequently have changed for the better, and with that change has come a flourishing of the arts, so that increasingly outsiders associate the country not with violent politics but with the poems of Seamus Heaney, the music of Van Morrison, and other contributions to world culture.

The capital is Belfast, a modern city whose historic centre was badly damaged by aerial bombardment during World War II. Once renowned for its shipyards—the Titanic was built there—Belfast has lost much of its industrial base. The city—as with Northern Ireland's other chief cities Londonderry (known locally and historically as Derry) and Armagh—is graced with parks and tidy residential neighbourhoods. More handsome still is the Northern Irish countryside—green, fertile, and laced with rivers and lakes, all of which have found lyrical expression in the nation's folk and artistic traditions.

2.1. Geographical position of Northern Ireland.

Northern Ireland occupies about one-sixth of the island of Ireland and is separated on the east from Scotland, another part of the United Kingdom, by the narrow North Channel, which is at one point only 13 miles (21 km) wide. The Irish Sea separates Northern Ireland from England and Wales on the east and southeast, respectively, and the Atlantic Ocean lies to the north. The southern and western borders are with the republic of Ireland.

Northern Ireland can be thought of topographically as a saucer centred on Lough (lake) Neagh, the upturned rim of which forms the highlands. Five of the six historic counties—Antrim, Down, Armagh, Tyrone, and Londonderry—meet at the lake, and each has a highland region on the saucer's rim. To the north and east the mountains of Antrim (physiographically a plateau) tilt upward toward the coast.

2.2. Climate and landscape

Northern Ireland's climate is temperate and maritime; most of its weather comes from the southwest in a series of low-pressure systems bringing the rain and clouds that often lend character to the landscape. Because Northern Ireland is near the central track of such lows, it often experiences high winds. In the north and on the east coast, particularly, severe westerly gales are common. Above the 800-foot level, distorted trees and windbreaks testify to the severity of the weather. Annual rainfall decreases from west to east, although the hills accentuate the amount to some 80 inches in parts of the west, and there is as little as 32.5 inches at Lough Neagh and the extreme southeast. A relatively dry spring gives way to a wet

summer and a wetter winter. Daily conditions generally are highly changeable, but there are no extremes of heat and cold. The region is exposed to the ameliorating effects of the North Atlantic Current, a northeastward extension of the Gulf Stream. Average January temperatures vary from 38 °Fon the north coast to 35 °F in the east; in July temperatures of 65 °F are common. In late spring and early summer the east has slightly lower temperatures accompanied by coastal fog. These mild and humid climatic conditions have, in sum, made Northern Ireland a green country in all seasons.

Landscape

Northern Ireland occupies about one-sixth of the island of Ireland and is separated on the east from Scotland, another part of the United Kingdom, by the narrow North Channel, which is at one point only 13 miles wide. The Irish Sea separates Northern Ireland from England and Wales on the east and southeast, respectively, and the Atlantic Ocean lies to the north. The southern and western borders are with the republic of Ireland.

Northern Ireland can be thought of topographically as a saucer centred on Lough (lake) Neagh, the upturned rim of which forms the highlands. Five of the six historic counties—Antrim, Down, Armagh, Tyrone, and Londonderry—meet at the lake, and each has a highland region on the saucer's rim. To the north and east the mountains of Antrim (physiographically a plateau) tilt upward toward the coast. They reach an elevation of 1,817 feet (554 metres) at Trostan, with the plateau terminating in an impressive cliff coastline of basalts and chalk that is broken by a series of the glaciated valleys known as glens, which face Scotland and are rather isolated from the rest of Northern Ireland. The rounded landscape of drumlins—smooth, elongated mounds left by the melting ice of the final Pleistocene glaciation—in the southeast is punctuated by Slieve Croob, which rises to 1,745 feet (532 metres), and culminates in the Mourne Mountains, which reach an elevation of 2,789 feet (850 metres) at Slieve Donard (Northern Ireland's highest point) within 2 miles (3 km) of the sea. This impressive landscape of granite peaks is bounded by Carlingford Lough to the south.

The scenery to the south of Lough Neagh is gentler, but the land rises to 1,886 feet (575 metres) in Slieve Gullion near the border with Ireland. West of Lough Neagh the land rises gently to the more rounded Sperrin Mountains; Sawel, at 2,224 feet (678 metres), is the highest of several hills over 2,000 feet (610 metres). The far southwest, the historic County Fermanagh, is focused geographically on the basin of Lough Erne, in a drumlin-strewn area ringed by hills more than 1,000 feet (300 metres) high.

Fauna & Flora

The general features of the vegetation of Northern Ireland are similar to those in the northwest of Britain. The human imprint is heavy on the landscape and is particularly evident in the absence of trees. Most of the land has been plowed, drained, and cultivated for centuries. Above the limit of cultivation, rough pastures are grazed extensively, and beyond them lies a zone of mountain vegetation. Only about 5 percent of the land is now under forest, and most of this has been planted by the state. Young trees in these plantations are economically unimportant, but locally they help to diversify the landscape.

The fauna of Northern Ireland is not very different from that of Great Britain. There are, however, fewer species of mammals and birds. Only two mammals—the Irish stoat and the Irish hare—and three species of birds are exclusively Irish. The region is rich in fish, particularly pike, perch, trout, and salmon; the first is the only fish introduced in historic times.

As a result of ongoing concern with conservation, there are some 40 nature reserves and several bird sanctuaries controlled by the Ulster Wildlife Trust and by the Department of the Environment.

2.3. Population of Northern Ireland

In terms of population, Northern Ireland is the smallest part of the United Kingdom, and its demographic profile differs from that of Great Britain in a number of ways. Although the Northern Irish birth rate declined over the last two decades of the 20th century, it remains relatively high by British standards. Since partition, emigration from Northern Ireland has tended to outpace immigration.

However, the net outflow of people from the region has been relatively small, especially when compared with the mass emigration that has typified Ireland in various periods. The combination of a relatively high birth rate and negligible out-migration has contributed to a gradual rise in the population of Northern Ireland. The population of Northern Ireland is comparatively young in relation to that of the rest of the United Kingdom.

Northern Ireland is one of the countries in United Kingdom with population over 1.8 million. The country is the least in size among the countries in the UK. Northern Ireland is just 5.7 percent of the United Kingdom in terms of land size and the population of the nation is 2.9 percent of the whole UK.

Northern Ireland is the smaller of the two administrative units on the island of Ireland. The other counterpart is the Republic of Ireland and it is bigger than North Ireland in land size and population. Both countries separated in 1920 and Northern Ireland was formed in 1921. Despite this separation, the people of Northern Ireland still have a good relationship with people in the Republic of Ireland. The culture of the people in Republic of Ireland is practiced by some people in Northern Ireland until today.

Based on recent research, Northern Ireland population will reach 1,897,893 by 1st July of 2019**.**

BELFAST. Belfast is the capital city of Northern Ireland. It is also the largest city in Northern Ireland. It is the fourteenth most populous city in the United Kingdom. The city of Belfast lies at the heart of Belfast Urban Area. Belfast has traditionally been a hotbed of political activism. Belfast is accessible through two international airports: Belfast International Airport and George Best Belfast City Airport. The population of city of Belfast is 267,500. Belfast is home to the ship builders, Harland and Wolff, which built the RMS Titanic. Belfast is divided into two postcode districts BT1 for the area lying north of the City Hall, and BT2 for the area to its south. The city is majorly divided into four main areas, namely, North Belfast, East Belfast, South Belfast, and West Belfast. The city is subdivided into wards. There are 51 wards in Belfast.

🗐Questions:

1. What creature is depicted on the national flag of Wales?
2. What is the capital city of Wales?
3. What is the Welsh emblem on the flag?
4. The longest river in Wales is the River Severn, where does it originate?
5. What do you know about the climate of Wales ?
6. What is the capital of Northern Ireland?
7. What is the name of the large lake in the centre of Northern Ireland?
8. What is the highest mountain in Northern Ireland?
9. How many counties make up Northern Ireland?
10. Belfast has four cultural districts; which district is home to Northern Ireland's leading university?
11. Which well known traditional dish in Northern Ireland is similar to an English breakfast?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match features (1-6) with either Wales or Northern Ireland.

Mark (A) if the answer is Wales

Mark (B) if the answer is Northern Ireland

1. constituent unit of the United Kingdom that forms a westward extension of the island of Great Britain

2. part of the United Kingdom, lying in the northeastern quadrant of the island of Ireland, on the western continental periphery often characterized as Atlantic Europe

3. The fauna is not very different from that of Great Britain

4. Planted woodlands are common, including mixed parkland, boundary woods, and commercial plantations

5. occupies about one-sixth of the island of Ireland

6. has a maritime climate dominated by highly unpredictable shifts in Atlantic air masses, which, combined with the diverse range of elevations, often cause local conditions to vary considerably from day to day

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. Wales is a country in the United Kingdom next to England.
2. There is one national park in Wales.
3. Five per cent of Welsh people live in Cardiff.
4. You can go to concerts and sports matches at the Millennium Stadium.
5. At the National Eisteddfod people sing in English.
6. Everyone in Wales speaks Welsh.
7. Villages, towns and cities in Wales have two names.

III. Fill the gaps

Celtic, Europe, signs, 20 per cent, dialect, official, school, capital

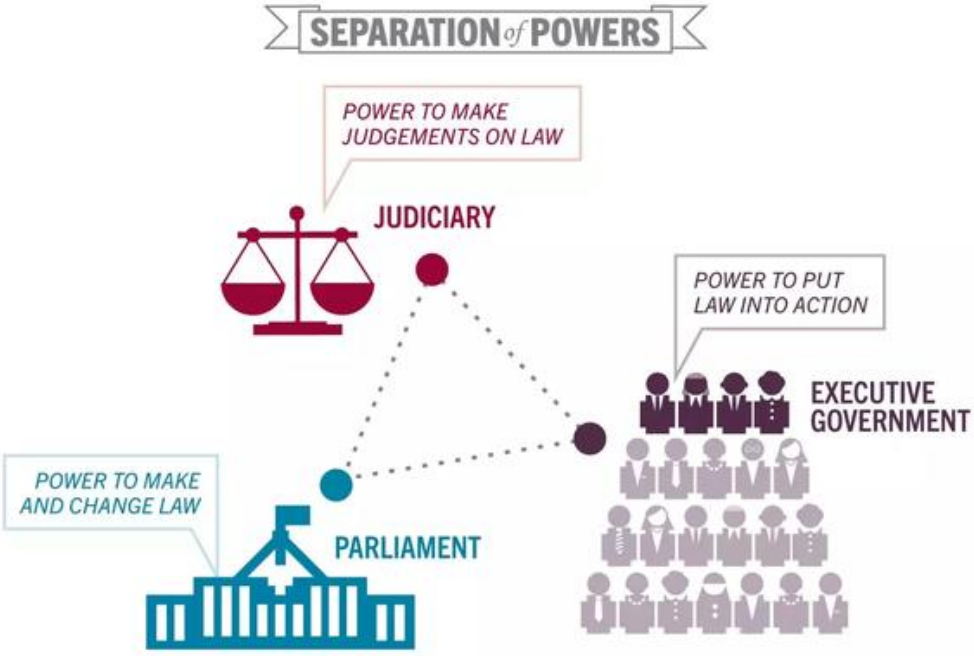
The _____ languages of Wales are English and Welsh and 'Wenglish' is a Welsh-English _____. Everyone speaks English, but if you go to _____ in Wales you have to learn Welsh until you are 16. Street _____ are written in Welsh and English, and villages, towns and cities have an English name and a Welsh name. For example, the _____city is Cardiff or Caerdydd. One of the longest place names in the world is a village in Wales called Llanfairpwllgwingyllgogerychwyrndrobwllllandysiliogogogoch. The Welsh language is an old, _____language which is very different from English. For example, the Welsh name for 'Wales' is 'Cymru', 'Good morning' is 'Bore da' and 'How are you?' is 'Sut mae?'. It is one of the oldest languages in _____ and around _____ of people in Wales speak Welsh.

Vocabulary:

To outpace- опережать – o'sib chiqmoq
mass emigration- массовая эмиграция –keng ko'lamda emigratsiya
low-pressure system- система низкогодавления-quyi bosim sistemasi
birth rate- уровеньрождаемости-tug'ilish ko'rsatgichlari
garrison- гарнизонт-ufq
demarcate – разграничивать-chegaralash

vegetation- растительность-o’simlik dunyosi
cultivated – культурный-madaniy

THEME 5. The Government of the United Kingdom. The Monarchy.



Questions to be discussed:

1.1 The political system. Three main branches

1.2. Legislative branch: Parliament of The United Kingdom. House of Commons. House of Lords

1.3. Executive branch: The central government of UK

1.4. Judicial Branch

1.5. Queen Elizabeth II

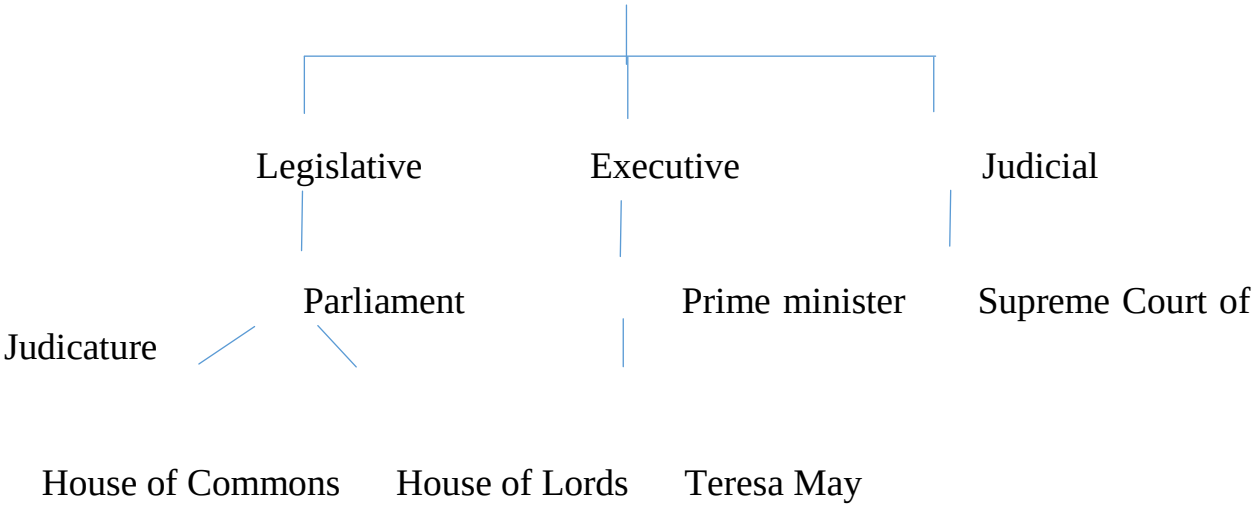
Key words: government, branches, legislative, executive, judicial, Parliament, House of Commons, House of Lords, Prime Minister, monarch, election, MPs, bills, constitutional monarchy, the Cabinet, upper house, lower house, department.

1.1. Political System. Three main brabches.

Britain is a constitutional monarchy where the reigning monarch does not make open political decisions. Such decisions are taken by the Prime Minister and the Cabinet.

The British government, commonly known as "Her Majesty's Government", is the central government of the United Kingdom. The government is headed by the prime minister who appoints other ministers. The premier and other senior ministers form the Cabinet which is the top-most decision making committee. The ministers are accountable to the Parliament which they also sit in while the government is dependent on the Parliament for policy making. The UK's general election is held after every five years to elect the House of Commons. The monarch selects as prime minister the person who commands a majority of support in the House of Common. The United Kingdom is a member of the Commonwealth.

The Government



1.2. Legislative Branch: Parliament Of The United Kingdom.

The Government of the United Kingdom is accountable to the Parliament, a principle known as "responsible government". The monarch does not make an open political decision, but all the decisions are made by the Parliament and the government. The Parliament of the UK has two levels: House of Lords (Upper) and the House of Commons (Lower). The House of Commons is more powerful and can overrule the amendments of the House of Lords. While the upper house can introduce bills, most of the important bills are submitted by the lower house of which the majority of the bills in the lower house are presented by the government. The Ministers of the Crown are expected to make statements and take questions from members of the houses they are sitting in. The most senior ministers prefer the House of Commons to the House of Lords. The government is expected to maintain the confidence of the House of Commons since it requires its support for the passing of primary legislations. If the government loses the confidence of the lower house, it is forced to either resign or a General Election is held. The members of Parliament have an opportunity to put the premier to account during the Prime Minister’s Question Time (PMQs).

House of Commons

The House of Commons is the lower house of the Parliament of the United Kingdom. Like the upper house, the House of Lords, it meets in the Palace of Westminster. Officially, the full name of the house is the Honourable the Commons of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland in Parliament assembled. Owing to shortage of space, its office accommodation extends into Portcullis House.

The Commons is an elected body consisting of 650 members known as Members of Parliament (MPs). Members are elected to represent constituencies by first-past-the-post and hold their seats until Parliament is dissolved.

Under the Parliament Act 1911, the Lords' power to reject legislation was reduced to a delaying power. The Government is solely responsible to the House of Commons and the Prime Minister stays in office only as long as he or she retains the confidence of a majority of the Commons.

House of Lords

The House of Lords, also known as the House of Peers, is the upper house of the Parliament of the United Kingdom. Like the House of Commons, it meets in the Palace of Westminster. Officially, the full name of the house is the Right Honourable the Lords Spiritual and Temporal of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland in Parliament assembled.

Unlike the elected House of Commons, all members of the House of Lords (excluding 90 hereditary peers elected among themselves and two peers who are ex officio members) are appointed. The membership of the House of Lords is drawn from the peerage and is made up of Lords Spiritual and Lords Temporal.

The House of Lords scrutinize bills that have been approved by the House of Commons. It regularly reviews and amends Bills from the Commons. While it is unable to prevent Bills passing into law, except in certain limited circumstances, it can delay Bills and force the Commons to reconsider their decisions. In this capacity, the House of Lords acts as a check on the House of Commons that is independent from the electoral process. Bills can be introduced into either the House of Lords or the House of Commons. While members of the Lords may also take on roles as government ministers, high-ranking officials such as cabinet ministers are usually drawn from the Commons. The House of Lords has its own support services, separate from the Commons, including the House of Lords Library.

1.3. Executive Branch: The Central Government of The United Kingdom

The executive branch is the part of government with authority and responsibility for the daily administration of the state. It executes, or enforces, the law. The idea of separation of powers in a liberal democracy means that there is an executive, legislative and judicial branch, with authority thus distributed among these branches, so as to protect individual liberty in response to the possibility of tyrannical leadership. So, the legislature makes the laws, the judiciary interprets the laws, whilst the executive enforces the law.

That said, the executive branch can be the source of certain types of law, because they are able to make executive decrees or executive orders, and executive bureaucracies can be the source of regulations. So, the executive branch of government consists of leaders of offices, with the top leadership roles including the 'Head of State' (the Queen in the UK, a ceremonial position), the 'Head of Government' (the Prime Minister in the UK, and the de facto leader), in addition to a defence minister, an interior minister (the Home Secretary in the UK), a foreign minister, a finance minister (the Chancellor of the Exchequer in the UK) and a justice minister.

In the study of the Government of the UK, we look at the effectiveness of the checks and balances on the power of the executive provided by the legislature (in both the House of Commons and House of Lords) and the judiciary. We also look at how the civil service works with the executive and how the power of the executive itself is balanced with the power of the Prime Minister.

The Cabinet is the executive organ of government. It´s made up by the leading ministers and heads of government departments (about 20 people). So the Government is a larger body (about 80 people). The second largest party forms the official Opposition with its own leader and „shadow cabinet".

The present Prime Minister is Theresa May, the head of the Conservative Party. The Prime Minister´s official residence is 10 Downing Street.

1.4. Judicial branch

The judicial branch interprets laws. The highest judicial body is the Supreme Court of Judicature: the High Court of Justice and the Court of Appeal. It is often said that the English law is superior to the law of most other countries. Indeed, the English judicial system contains many rules which protect the individual against arbitrary action by the police and the government.

The Supreme Court is the highest court of appeal for the whole of the UK. Originally, the Supreme Court was a part of the House of Lords. Because the government wanted the Legislative and Judicial branches separate, the Supreme Court was created in 2009. The Supreme Court consists of 12 judges who are known as the "Justices of the Supreme Court".These judges also serve as the highest court of appeal for many countries in the Commonwealth and other British territories. For a case to be heard at this court, it has had to have passed through all of the other courts shown above. The layout of the Supreme Court is very different from what you would expect. There isn't a witness box, there isn't a jury box and there isn't even a press box. Anybody can come in and watch the case. All members of this court sit round a table,where the judges sit on one side, and the representatives and other lawyers sit on the other side. As this is the highest court for appeals, the judges don't hear witnesses, don't decide who is telling the truth. They get given a set of facts on a case by a party, and they inform those parties of the law.

1.5. Queen Elizabeth II

The British monarch, although limited in power, is the official Head of State and the Head of the Nation. As such, she serves as Britain's public face and a national icon and performs official and ceremonial duties, like opening each session of Parliament, appointing the Prime Minister and other government officials, regularly meeting with the Prime Minister, honoring the achievements of British citizens, representing Britain in the international community, and making appearances at events and festivities.

Elizabeth II (Elizabeth Alexandra Mary; born 21 April 1926) is Queen of the United Kingdom and the other Commonwealth realms. Elizabeth was born in

London as the first child of the Duke and Duchess of York, later King George VI and Queen Elizabeth, and she was educated privately at home. In 1947, she married Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh, a former prince of Greece and Denmark, with whom she has four children: Charles, Prince of Wales; Anne, Princess Royal; Prince Andrew, Duke of York; and Prince Edward, Earl of Wessex. Her coronation on 2 June 1953 in Westminster Abbey, with the exception of the anointing and communion, was televised for the first time. In 2017, she became the first British monarch to reach a Sapphire Jubilee. She is the longest-lived and longest-reigning British monarch as well as the world's longest-reigning queen regnant and female head of state, the oldest and longest-reigning current monarch and the longest-serving current head of state.

🗐**Questions:**

1. What are the main branches of the government of Great Britain?
2. Who is the monarch of UK? What is her responsibility?
3. What kind of a branch the Parliament is? Parliament derived into…?
4. How the members of House of Commons are elected? How many members does House of Commons include?
5. How the members of House of Lords are elected? How many members does House of Lords include?
6. Who is the Prime Minister of the UK? Where is the residence of Prime Minister located?
7. What do you know about judicial branch of the government?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match words (1-10) with their definitions (a-j)

1. Judicial a. remove or take away
2. Constitutional Monarchy b. relating to formal religious or public events
3. Government c. having the power to make laws.
4. Ceremonial d. complicated rules, processes, and written work
5. Withdraw e. people with the authority to govern a country
6. Legislative f. a person having political power

7. Electoral process g. relating to courts of law or judges

8. Authority h. the method by which a person is elected

9. Bureaucracy i. the official home of a government minister

10.Residence j. power of monarch is limited by a constitution

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage).

1. The ministers are accountable to the monarch which they also sit in.

2. The British Government is also called “Her Majesty’s Government”.

3. The coronation of Queen Elizabeth II on 2 June 1952 in Westminster Abbey

4. While the upper house can introduce bills, most of the important bills are submitted by the lower house.

5. The House of Commons is the upper house of the Parliament.

6. The membership of the House of Lords is based on election.

7. The Cabinet is made up by the leading ministers and heads of government departments.

8 All members of Supreme Court sit round a table, while Judges and Lawyers sit in opposite side toward each other.

III. Fill in the gaps

1. As such, she serves as _____ face and a national icon and performs official and ceremonial duties, like opening each session of_____, appointing the Prime Minister and other government_____, regularly meeting with the _____, honoring the achievements of British _____, representing Britain in the international community, and making appearances at events and festivities.

2. The Ministers of the _____ are expected to make statements and take questions from members of the houses they are sitting in. The most _____ ministers prefer the House of Commons to the _____.

3. The Commons is an elected body consisting of _____members known as Members of Parliament (MPs). Members are elected to represent _____ by first-past-the-post and hold their seats until _____ is dissolved.

4. In this capacity, the House of _____ acts as a check on the House of _____that is independent from the electoral process. Bills can be _____ into either the House of Lords or the House of Commons.

5. So, the executive branch of government consists of _____, with the top leadership roles including the _____ (the Queen in the UK, a ceremonial position), the _____ (the Prime Minister in the UK, and the de facto leader), in addition to a defence minister, an _____ minister (the Home Secretary in the UK), a foreign minister, a _____ (the Chancellor of the Exchequer in the UK) and a justice minister.

Vocabulary:

Committee – Комитет, комиссия – Qo'mita
Election – Выборы - Saylov
Policy – Политика - Siyosat
Tooverrule – аннулировать, отклонять - bekor qilmoq
Amendment – Поправка - O'zgartirish
Bill – Законопроект - Qonun
Legislation – Законодательство - Qonunchilik
To put someone to account - привлечькответственности - Biror kishini javobgarlikka tortish
Executive – Исполнительный - Ijrochi
Withdraw – сниматьвозражения - e'tirozlarni olib tashlamoq
Department – отдел, департамент - bo'lim
Persecution – преследование - ta'qib qilish
Public face – публичнаяличность - ommaviy shaxs
National icon – национальная икона - milliy ramz
Defamation – диффамация, клевета - tuhmat

THEME 6. British symbols. Political system and parties.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. The Union Jack

1.2. UK's Patron Saints and Floral Emblems

1.3. Political system and parties

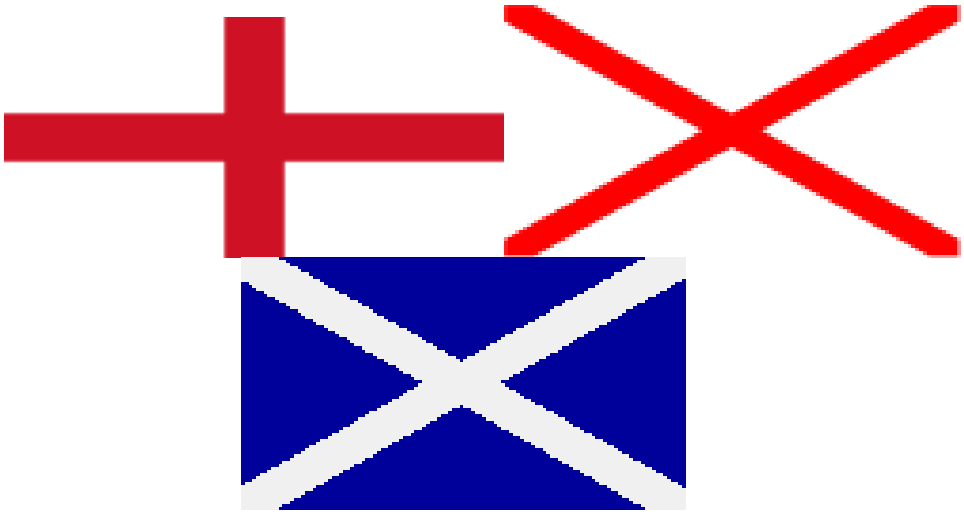
Key words: Union Jack, constitutional monarchy, political parties, Conservative Party, Labour Party, Prime Minister

1.1. The Union Jack.

The flag of the UK is known as the Union Jack. It has its history. It all began

in 1603 when Scotland was joined to England and Wales.

The flag is made up of 3 crosses.



The upright cross is the Cross of St. George the patron saint of England. The white diagonal cross is the cross of St. Andrew, the patron saint of Scotland. The red diagonal cross is the cross of St. Patrick, the patron saint of Ireland. All of them are on the blue background. (Jack is a sailing term for a flag.)

It has been used as the British flag since 1603, when Scotland and England were united. The red diagonal cross of Ireland was added in 1801, when Ireland became part of the United Kingdom. Wales is not represented on the Union Jack, because it is a principality of England. The Union Jack is most often seen flying from public buildings or at sports events. Children may wave small Union Jacks when a member of the royal family visits their town during national celebrations strings of small flags are hung across the street as bunting.

The Union Jack is less important to British people than the Stars and Stripes is to Americans. Many people feel a stronger loyalty to the national flags of England, Scotland, Wales or Northern Ireland. The flag of the European Union, a circle of gold stars on a blue background, is sometimes also seen in Britain, e.g. on car

number plates.

1.2. UK's Patron Saints and Floral Emblems.

The humid and mild climate of Great Britain is good for plants and flowers. Some of them have become symbols in the UK. You probably know that the poppy is the symbol of peace, the red rose is the national emblem of England, and the thistle is the national emblem of Scotland and the Edinburgh International Festival. The daffodils and the leek are the emblems of Wales; the shamrock (a kind of clover) is the emblem of Ireland.

The national emblem of England is the rose and St. George. The flower has been adopted as England's emblem since the time of the Wars of the Roses (1455-1485) - civil wars between the royal house of Lancaster (whose emblem was a red rose) and the royal house of York (whose emblem was a white rose). The Yorkiest regime ended with the defeat of King Richard III by the future Henry VII at Bosworth on 22 August 1485, and the two roses were united into the Tudor rose (a red rose with a white centre) by Henry VII when he married Elizabeth of York.

The national flower of Northern Ireland is the shamrock and St. Patrick, a three-leaved plant similar to clover. An Irish tale tells of how Patrick used the three-leafed shamrock to explain the Trinity. He used it in his sermons to represent how the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit could all exist as separate elements of the same entity. His followers adopted the custom of wearing a shamrock on his feast day. (1st picture below)

The Scottish national flower is the thistle and St. Andrew, (2nd picture below)a prickly-leaved purple flower that was first used in the 15th century as a symbol of

defense. The three flowers - rose, thistle and shamrock - are often displayed beneath the shield on the Royal Coat of Arms.

Well, there are numerous stories regailing how this prickly flower gained the honor, but no one knows for sure.

The most popular story has it that sometime during the 13th Century, around 1263, the King of Norway, King Haakon IV, decided to carry on a campaign against the Scots. During one of those battles, the Scots knowing the highlands well took rest in the fields surrounded by the Prickly Purple Thistle. The Norse, believing that they had darkness as an advantage, set on attacking while the Scots slept. They removed their protective footware in order not to make noise and crept up on the resting Scots. The "Barefooted Norsemen" found them being scratched and scarred by the prickly flower and cried out in pain, thus awaking the sleeping Scots who then defeated the Norse. Since then the Thistle has been seen as a reminder to all that no one can mess with the Scots without feeling the pain of the Thistle.

So when did the Scottish start using the Thistle as its Emblem? Well the Thistle appeared in coins and drawings both prior to the Norse invasion and after their defeat. The Thistle is believed to have become the official emblem of Scotland during the reign of Alexander III. The Thistle as an emblem was later adopted by King James V as the emblem for the Order of the Thistle, in the 16th Century. The Order of the Thistle was originally to represent the King and 12 of his Knights and was to be modeled after their Savior Jesus Christ and his 12 disciples. The Order of the Thistle was later revised and opened to others including women.

You will see the Thistle in the form of pins, broaches, and Skean Dhu's (Skean

Dhu is the knife which is worn in the top of a stocking as part of traditional Scottish highland dress). You will also see it on flags and plaques. The Thistle is often surrounded by the words "Nemo me impune lacessit" which is found on the Order of the Thistle and means "No one harms me without punishment", and reminds us of the Norses who tried to attack the sleepy Scots and were stung by the beautiful purple, yet prickly Thistle.

Welsh national flower is usually considered to be the daffodil, which is traditionally worn on St. David's Day. However, the humble leek is also considered to be a traditional emblem of Wales, possibly because its colours, white over green, echo the ancient Welsh standard. The red dragon of Cadwallader, which is now often used as the national flag of Wales, dates from the 1950s.

St. David is the patron saint of Wales. He was a monk who lived on bread, water, herbs and leeks and died on March 589 A. D. The leek had been recognised as the emblem of Wales since the middle of the 16th century. Its association with Wales can in fact be traced back to the battle of Heathfield in 633 AD, when St. David persuaded his countrymen to distinguish themselves from their Saxon foes by wearing a leek in their caps. It was decided that from 1984, British £1 coins would feature different reverse designs for each of the four parts of the United Kingdom. All £1 coins dated 1985 feature on the reverse the Welsh Leek. Nowadays, the leek is worn on March 1 (St. David's Day—the Welsh national holiday) and at international rugby matches. The daffodil is also a Welsh national emblem because its Welsh name is translated as a type of leek.

A favourite souvenir for the tourists is a Welsh love spoon. They are made of wood and are carved very beautifully. Originally, they were made by young men as a love taken for their sweethearts. There are many different designs

demonstrating the skill and love of the hopeful suitor. If the girl kept this present, all was well, but if she sent it back, she did not want him. As in many other customs, the eating of food seems to have a lot to do with the choice of a spoon as a gift. The practice of using a particular utensil to eat led perhaps to the spoons being chosen, first for its utilitarian use, but then as a symbol of a desire to help one's lover. No longer to be used for eating, the spoons were given long handles and could be hung on the wall as reminders or as decorations. Elaborate patterns and intricate designs began to proliferate, and Welsh love spoons began to appear in every conceivable size and shape, and in different kinds of wood.

The Red Dragon of Wales (y ddraig goch), although perhaps of Chinese origin, was introduced to Britain by the Romans some eighteen hundred years ago. Initially a military standard, in time this mythical beast developed into the flag of a nation. The Welsh may be the only people to have entered this millennium with the "same" flag as they entered the current one.

Today despite the dominance of its neighbour England, the people of Wales have never ceased to be Welsh. The language culture and flag have all survived. The Welsh flag is seen perhaps now more than ever before in its history. Abroad you will see the Welsh flag still following the Welsh Regiments in the Falklands, in the Gulf and in Bosnia. At home the Welsh flag is to be seen flying in most towns as well on a massive scale at Rugby matches and other national events.

Wales has always been known as a country of music and song. As well as the many male-voice choirs and famous rugby match singing, some of the greatest opera singers, like Geraint Evans, and pop singers, like Tom Jones, are also Welsh. Since the 12th century we have records of an annual competition (or Eisteddfod

[ais'teSvad] in Welsh), which was held to find the best poets, writers and musicians in the country. Originally only professionals took part, but now the Eisteddfod is open to the public and, because all the events are in Welsh, it encourages a strong interest in the Welsh arts.

Now Eisteddfod is a festival of Welsh culture. It includes competitions in prose, poetry and singing. The Eisteddfod now includes local crafts, orchestral and brass band contests and even ambulance work! Many local communities organize their own Eisteddfod, and the National Eisteddfod is held in August each year, alternately in a northern or a southern town.

1. The Statue of Britannia in Plymouth. Britannia is a national personification of the UK.
2. Britannia, featured on Royal Mint gold bullion coin

Britannia is a national personification of the United Kingdom, originating from Roman Britain. Britannia is symbolised as a young woman with brown or golden

hair, wearing a Corinthian helmet and white robes. She holds Poseidon's three-pronged trident and a shield, bearing the Union Flag. Sometimes she is depicted as riding the back of a lion. At and since the height of the British Empire, Britannia has often associated with maritime dominance, as in the patriotic song Rule, Britannia! The lion symbol is depicted behind Britannia on the British fifty pence coin and one is shown crowned on the back of the British ten pence coin. It is also used as a symbol on the non-ceremonial flag of the British Army. The bulldog is sometimes used as a symbol of the United Kingdom and has been associated with Winston Churchill's defiance of Nazi Germany.

1.3.Political parties of Great Britain

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is a constitutional monarchy. Britain does not have a written constitution. Parliament is the most important authority in Britain.

The monarch serves formally as head of state. The present sovereign is Queen Elizabeth II (the second). The House of Commons consists of Members of Parliament. General elections are held every five years. Ail citizens aged 18 have the right to vote. There are few political parties in Britain. The main ones are: the Conservative Party, the Labour Party. Each political party puts up one candidate for each constituency.

The one who wins the most votes is MP for that area. The party which wins the most seats in Parliament forms the Government; its leader becomes the Prime Minister. The functions of the House of Commons are legislation and scrutiny of government activities. The House of Commons is presided over by the Speaker. The House of Lords is presided by the Lord Chancellor. The House of Lords has no real power. It's in the House of Commons that new bills are introduced and debated. Parliament is responsible for British national policy. Local governments are responsible for organizing of education, police and many others.

Ten **political parties** are represented in the House of Commons of the United Kingdom, with a further two represented in the European Parliament and quite a

few more with representation at a local level. As elections to the Parliament of the United Kingdom are operated under a 'first past the postsystem' and elections to the Parliament of the European Union are operated under a proportional representation system, minor parties who have support spread throughout the country, but not enough concentrated support to win an entire constituency, can often find representation in the EU. For this reason, the United Kingdom Independence Party and the British National Party have MEPs but no MPs.

There are four legislative bodies in the United Kingdom alongside the European Parliament which are made up of officials elected by residents of the United Kingdom who hold citizenship to the United Kingdom, the Republic of Ireland, or any Commonwealth nation. The House of Commons, located in London, England, is the primary governing body in the United Kingdom responsible for creating and upholding national law, except for areas devolved to the constituent nations, and with the power to alter and repeal those brought into effect by its devolved counterparts. Elections to the House of Commons take place once every five years under a first-past-the-post system. Members of the House of Lords are unelected; rather, they are made Lords and Ladies for their services, or for otherwise being incredibly rich.

Members of the Scottish Parliament, the National Assembly for Wales, and the Northern Ireland Assembly can be voted for by the aforementioned citizens living within jurisdiction of the legislative body concerned, each devolved body using a variation of the proportional representation system. Elections to the devolved Parliament and Assemblies take place once every four years. Elections to the European Parliament take place once every five years by proportional representation.

Conservative Party

Members of the House of Commons: 313[1]

Members of the European Parliament: 20

Members of the House of Lords: 254

Scottish Parliament: 31

Welsh Assembly: 12

The Conservative Party, officially the "Conservative & Unionist Party", and commonly known as "The Tory Party" or "the Tories" is one of the two largest political parties in the United Kingdom. Since World War Two, every Prime Minister has come from the Conservative Party or the Labour Party. Generally standing for lower taxation, a smaller state and lower welfare, the Conservative Party is the traditional right-wing party in the UK. Given that the Conservative Party vehemently opposed almost all of Blair's early manifesto promises and that the party leadership has now accepted many of them (minimum wage, Bank of England independence, civil partnerships, various anti-discrimination laws), the party can be quite fractured at times, with a significant minority being very much opposed to membership of the European Union. Notable figures include Winston Churchill, Margaret Thatcher, David Cameron, Theresa May, and Boris Johnson.

Labour Party

Members of the House of Commons: 246

Members of the European Parliament: 20

Members of the House of Lords: 199

Scottish Parliament: 23

Welsh Assembly: 29

The Labour Party is the other main party. Founded as a socialist party, the Labour Party had a huge role in the creation of the Welfare State and the National Health Service. After nearly two decades of Conservative rule, the Labour Party moved much closer to the centre, stepping away from its socialist roots and becoming a "big tent" centrist party. This step clearly made them an electable opposition, as they won in a massive landslide in 1997, but it's now somewhat unclear exactly what they stand for other than "we're nicer and less right-wing than those bastard Tories". New leader Jeremy Corbyn, while restoring self-belief among the party faithful, appears less popular among the general public - and they're the ones who decide elections. Notable Labour figures include Clement

Attlee, Tony Blair, Gordon Brown, Jeremy Corbyn, and a wealth of celebrity supporters.

Liberal Democrats

Members of the House of Commons: 11

Members of the European Parliament: 1

Members of the House of Lords: 100

Scottish Parliament: 5

Welsh Assembly: 1

The Liberal Democrats were traditionally the third party in the United Kingdom but severely reduced their MPs and popular vote in the 2015 General Election. Their predecessors the Liberal Party declined severely before World War Two as the Labour Party took over as the main left-wing party. The Liberals were not a strong serious force in British politics, but they merged with the Social Democrat Party (a splinter group of the Labour Party) in 1988 to form the Liberal Democrats. The Liberal Democrats were hugely popular among students and have often been the go-to 'protest vote' of the middle classes. Advocating progressive taxation, nuclear disarmament and electoral reform, the Liberal Democrats saw a large surge in support as they were the only major party to seriously oppose the Iraq War. In a weird twist, they formed a coalition government with the Conservative Party in 2010, with the idea of 'taking the edge' off the Tory spending cuts and making them fairer for the poor. Their complete failure to do this severely damaged their support among students, public sector workers, all those affected by the budget cuts; they lost them a lot of support at local government level, losing them control of many local councils. in the 2015 election they lost nearly two-thirds of their support, and lost nearly 50 MPs. Notable figures include Nick Clegg, Charles Kennedy (the UK's favourite alcoholic), Vince Cable (leader from 2017, due to stand down summer 2019), and former leader Paddy Ashdown, who effectively ran Bosnia for a four year period.

Change UK

Members of the House of Commons: 11

Change UK, formerly The Independent Group (TIG or the Tiggers), comprised moderate Labour and Conservative MPs who split from their parties largely because of their support of the European Union and because they felt their own politics were different from two increasingly extremist parties.

🗐**Questions:**

1. What is the Union Jack?
2. What other national emblems do the countries have?
3. What can you say about their history?
4. How did these things become as the national emblems of the countries?
5. What is Eisteddfod?
6. Name political parties of the United Kingdom.
7. Where do origins of the Green party go back?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match sentences (1-6) with given endings (a-f)

1. The coat of arms of Scotland consists
2 .The shamrock (a three-leafed clover is
3. The red hand is also a symbol of
4. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is a
5. The shamrock is the symbol of
6. Wales has got two national symbols.

a. a yellow shield with a red rampant lion in the center
b. a popular way to represent Saint Patrick's Day
c. Northern Ireland. The Red Hand is in its flag
d. constitutional monarchy
e. Northern Ireland. It is also connected to St. Patric, Patron Saint of Ireland.
f. These are the daffodil and the leek

A. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. The United Kingdom flag was officially adopted on January 2, 1901.

2. The United Kingdom Royal Coat of Arms consists of a shield divided into four quadrants.

3. The coat of arms of England has five identical golden lions with blue tongues and claws.

4. Tartans are an internationally recognized symbol of Scotland.

5. The Coat of Arms of the Principality of Wales is a coat of arms used by the Prince of Wales.

B. Fill the gaps

The monarch serves formally as _____ of state. The present sovereign is Queen Elizabeth II (the second). The House of Commons consists of Members of Parliament. General elections are ____ every five years. Ail citizens aged 18 have the right to____. There are few political parties in Britain. The main ones are: the Conservative Party, the Labour Party. Each political party puts up one _____for each constituency.

The one who wins the most votes is MP for that area. The party which wins the most seats in Parliament forms the_____; its leader becomes the Prime Minister. The functions of the House of Commons are legislation and _____ of government activities. The House of _____ is presided over by the Speaker. The House of _____ is presided by the Lord Chancellor. The House of Lords has no real power. It's in the House of Commons that new bills are _____ and debated. Parliament is responsible for British national policy. Local governments are responsible for _____ of education, police and many others.

Vocabulary:

Loyalty – лояльность - vafodorlik
Represent – представлять – ko’rsatmoq
Entity – сущность - mavjudot

Shamrock – трилистник - beda
Regale – потчевать – qasamyoq qilmoq
Remove – удалить – olib tashlamoq
Protective – защитный - himoya
Prior – приоритетный - ustun
Authority – власть - hokimiyat
Legislation - законодательство - qonunchilik
Uphold – защищать – qo'llab quvvatlamoq
Proportional –пропорционально –mutanosib ravishda

THEME 7. British Education system.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1.History of education in England
1.2.Kindergarten
1.3.Primary education in the UK
1.4.Secondary education in the UK
1.5.Higher education in the UK

Key words: attendance, compulsory, mother tongue, local community, infant, junior, examination, comprehensive, course, fall behind, resources, bachelor degree, STEM subjects, global recognition

Age	Year/Setting	Key Stage
0-3	Children's Centre	EYFS
3-4	Nursery	EYFS
4-5	Reception	EYFS
5-6	Year 1	KS1
6-7	Year 2	KS1
7-8	Year 3	KS2
8-9	Year 4	KS2
9-10	Year 5	KS2
10-11	Year 6	KS2
11-12	Year 7	KS3
12-13	Year 8	KS3
13-14	Year 9	KS3
14-15	Year 10	KS4
15-16	Year 11	KS4
16-17	Year 12	KS5/Post 16
17-18	Year 13	KS5/Post 16

1.1.*History of education in England.*

The history of education in England is documented from Saxon settlement of England, and the setting up of the first cathedral schools in 597 and 604.

Education in England remained closely linked to religious institutions until the nineteenth century, although charity schools and "free grammar schools", which were open to children of any religious beliefs, became more common in the early modern period. Nineteenth

century reforms expanded education provision and introduced widespread state-funded schools. By the 1880s education was compulsory for children aged 5 to 10, with the school leaving age progressively raised since then, most recently to 18 in 2015.

The education system was expanded and reorganised multiple times throughout the 20th century, with a Tripartite System introduced in the 1940s, splitting secondary education into grammar schools, secondary technical schools and secondary modern schools. In the 1960s this began to be phased out in favour of comprehensive schools. Further reforms in the 1980s introduced the National Curriculum and allowed parents to choose which school their children went to. Academies were introduced in the 2000s and became the main type of secondary school in the 2010s.

1.2. Kindergarten.

Attendance at a nursery school or kindergarten for children under five isn't compulsory. All children must start compulsory schooling in the term following their fifth birthday. A government scheme introduced in 1998 makes provision for part-time, 'early years' education for four-year olds from the term following their fourth birthday. Children are guaranteed three two-and-a-half hour sessions a week at a registered play scheme or school of the parents' choice, which is one of the lowest provisions of nursery education in Europe. Children from three to five years old may be catered for in local state nursery schools, in nursery schools attached to primary schools or registered play schemes. Nursery school is highly recommended, particularly if a child or its parents aren't of English mother tongue. After one or two years in nursery school, a child is integrated into the local community and is well prepared for primary school (particularly if English isn't spoken at home). A number of books are available for parents who wish to help their young children learn at home, which most educationalists agree gives children a flying start at school.

1.3. Primary education.

Primary education in the UK begins at five years and in state schools is almost always co-educational (mixed boys and girls). Primary school consists mainly of first

or infant schools for children aged five to seven (or eight), middle or junior schools for those aged 7 to 11 (or 8 to 12) and combined first and middle schools for both age groups. In addition, first schools in some parts of England cater for children aged from five to eight, nine or ten, and are the first stage of a three-tier school system: first, middle and secondary. Some primary schools also provide nursery classes for children aged five. Government must provide a primary school place at the start of the term following a child's fifth birthday, although some admit children earlier. If a child attends a nursery class at a primary school, he usually moves up to the infants' class at the same school, although it isn't compulsory. Entry to a primary school isn't automatic and parents must apply to the head for a place. In a few areas, children may take the 11-plus examination, which determines whether they go on to a grammar or high school, or to a secondary modern school.

1.4. Secondary school in Britain.

Secondary schools are for children from 11 or 12 to 16 and for those who choose to stay on at school until age 18 (called 'sixth formers'). Most state secondary schools are co-educational. Students are streamed in some secondary schools for academic subjects. The main types of secondary schools are as follows:

- **Middle schools** - Although regarded as secondary schools, middle schools take children aged 8 or 9 who move on to senior comprehensive schools at 12 or 14.
- **Comprehensive Schools** – Admission is made without reference to ability or aptitude. Comprehensive schools provide a full range of courses for all levels of ability, from first to sixth year (from ages 11 to 18, although some cater for 11 to 16-year-olds only) and usually take students from the local catchment area. In some counties, all secondary schools are comprehensive.
- **Secondary Modern Schools** – Provide a general education with a practical bias for 11 to 16-year-olds who fail to gain acceptance at a grammar or high school. Like comprehensive schools, secondary modern schools cater for students from the local area.
- **Secondary Intermediate** – Northern Ireland only. Equivalent to a comprehensive school.
- **Secondary Grammar Schools** – Have a selective intake and provide an academic course for pupils aged from 11 to 16 or 18 years.

One of the most important decisions facing newcomers to the UK is whether to send their children to a state or private school. In some areas, state schools equal the best private schools, while in others (particularly in neglected inner city areas) they lack resources and may achieve poor results. In general, girls achieve much better results than boys and immigrant children (e.g. from Asia) often do particularly well. The UK's education system has had a bad press in recent years and, according to many surveys, is falling behind the leading countries, particularly in mathematics (maths) and science. Many parents prefer to send their children to a private school, often making financial sacrifices to do so. Not so many years ago, private education was the preserve of the children of the nobility and the rich, although today around

half of the parents of private school pupils were themselves educated at state schools. There has been a sharp increase in the number of children attending private schools in recent years, owing to the increasing affluence of the middle classes.

1.5. Higher education in the UK

In particular, the UK higher education is valued all over the world for its renowned standards and quality. Its higher education's prestige it also emanates from its graduates' work afterward. Many eminent people in many different areas whose work reached global recognition came out of British universities. Some of these universities and other higher education providers are ranked at the top among universities in the world. The UK capital city, London, not by accident, is considered to be the world's capital city of higher education. With its four universities being ranked in the world's top ten, London has the highest number of top worldwide ranked universities per city.

The typical first degree offered at English universities is the bachelor's degree with honours, which usually lasts for three years, although more vocational foundation degrees, typically lasting two years (or full-time equivalent)

are also available in some institutions. Many institutions now offer an integrated master's degree, particularly in STEM *«Science, Technology, Engineering and Mathematics»* subjects, as a first degree, which typically lasts for four years, the first three years running parallel to the bachelor's course. During a first degree students are known as undergraduates. The difference in fees between integrated and traditional postgraduate master's degrees (and that fees are capped at the first degree level for the former) makes taking an integrated master's degree as a first degree a more attractive option. Integrated master's degrees are often the standard route to chartered status for STEM professionals in England.

The **University of Oxford** is a collegiate research university in Oxford, England. There is evidence of teaching as early as 1096, making it the oldest university in the English-speaking world and the world's second-oldest university in continuous operation. It grew rapidly from 1167 when Henry II banned English students from attending the University of Paris. After disputes between students and Oxford townsfolk in 1209, some academics fled north-east to Cambridge where they established what became the University of Cambridge. The two 'ancient universities' are frequently jointly called 'Oxbridge'. The history and influence of the University of Oxford has made it one of the most prestigious universities in the world.

The university is made up of 38 constituent colleges, and a range of academic departments, which are organised into four divisions. All the colleges are self-governing institutions within the university, each controlling its own membership and with its own internal structure and activities. It does not have a main campus, and its buildings and facilities are scattered throughout the city centre. Undergraduate teaching at Oxford is organised around weekly tutorials at the colleges and halls, supported by classes, lectures, seminars, and laboratory work provided by university faculties and departments; some postgraduate teaching includes tutorials organised by faculties and departments. It operates the world's oldest university museum, as well as the largest university press in the worldand the largest academic library system nationwide.

The **University of Cambridge** (legally **The Chancellor, Masters, and Scholars of the University of Cambridge**) is a collegiate publicresearch university in Cambridge, United Kingdom. Founded in 1209 and granted a Royal Charter by King Henry III in 1231, Cambridge is the second-oldest university in the English-speaking world and the world's fourth-oldest surviving university. The university grew out of an association of scholars who left the University of Oxford after a dispute with the townspeople. The two 'ancient universities' share many common features and are often referred to jointly as 'Oxbridge'. The history and influence of the University of Cambridge has made it one of the most prestigious universities in the world.

Cambridge is formed from a variety of institutions which include 31 constituent Colleges and over 100 academic departments organised into six schools. Cambridge University Press, a department of the university, is the world's oldest publishing house and the second-largest university press in the world. The university also operates eight cultural and scientific museums, including the Fitzwilliam Museum, as well as a botanic garden. Cambridge's libraries hold a total of around 15 million books, eight million of which are in Cambridge University Library, a legal deposit library.

Questions:

1. Name the main stages of Britain`s development
2. When do children start to attend kindergarten?
3. Is it compulsory to attend kindergarten?
4. What is co-education?
5. How many stages does the primary school include?
6. What age is appropriate for secondary school?
7. Name some main types of secondary school
8. What is comprehensive school?
9. What is STEM?
10. Name some famous England`s Universities

Post-reading tasks:

I.Match the statements

1. Education in England remained closely linked — a. isn't compulsory
2. Attendance at a nursery school or kindergarten for children under five — b. to religious institutions
3. Many institutions now offer — c.a private school
4. The UK's education system has had — d.an integrated master's degree
5. Many parents prefer to send their children to — e. a bad press in recent year

II.Match the schools with their features

1. **Middle schools**
2. **Comprehensive Schools**
3. **Secondary Modern Schools**
4. **Secondary Intermediate**
5. **Secondary Grammar Schools**

a. Provide a general education with a practical bias for 11 to 16-year-olds who fail to gain acceptance at a grammar or high school
b. Northern Ireland only
c. Have a selective intake and provide an academic course for pupils aged from 11 to 16 or 18 years
d. Although regarded as secondary schools, middle schools take children aged 8 or 9 who move on to senior comprehensive schools at 12 or 14
e. Admission is made without reference to ability or aptitude

III.Do the following statements agree with the information given in the reading?

Mark:

TRUE *- if the statement agrees with the information*
FALSE *- if the statement contradicts the information*
NOT GIVEN *- if there is no information on this*

1. British education has a long history
2. Another term for kindergarten is «nursery school»
3. Kindergartens in Britain accept only definite number of children
4. Kindergartens do not prepare children for school
5. There is no co-mixed schools in Britain
6. If a child attends a nursery class at a primary school, it is compulsory to move up to the infants' class at the same school
7. Comprehensive schools provide a full range of courses for all levels of ability

8. There is a great number of private schools in the UK
9. Many parents prefer to send their children to a private school
10. London has the highest number of top worldwide ranked universities per city

IV.Fill the gaps

Higher education, London, National Carriculum, privare schools, prestigious, global recognition

1. In particular, the UK _____ is valued all over the world for its renowned standards and quality.
2. The UK capital city, _____, not by accident, is considered to be the world's capital city of higher education.
3. Further reforms in the 1980s introduced the _____ and allowed parents to choose which school their children went to.
4. There has been a sharp increase in the number of children attending _____ in recent years, owing to the increasing affluence of the middle classes.
5. One of the oldest and most _____ universities in the world, the *University of Oxford* attracts top scholars and students to its 44 colleges and halls.
6. Many eminent people in many different areas whose work reached global _____ came out of British universities.

Vocabulary:

Attendance	посещаемость	davomot
Compulsory	обязательный	majburiy
Mother tongue	родной язык	ona tili
Local community	местная община	mahalliy yig`in
Infant	ребенок	bola
Junior	младший	kichkina
Examination	экзамен	imtihon
Comprehensive	всесторонний	hartomonlama
Course	курс	kurs
Fall behind	отставать	ortda qolish
Resources	ресурсы	resurslar
Bachelor degree	бакалавр	bakalavr
STEM subjects	STEM предметы	STEM darslar
Global recognition	всемирное признание	butun dunyoga tanolish

THEME 8. Mass Media, Economy, Sport in the UK.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. Newspapers and Magazines

1.2. Radio and Television

1.3. Sport in UK

Key words: broadsheet format, compact edition ,The mass-market tabloids middle-market tabloids ,current affairs magazines ,Business magazines, BBC Parliament ,Academic journals, commercial activities ,national commercial channels

The mass media in the UK are represented mainly by the press (newspapers and magazines), TV and radio.

1.1. Newspapers and magazines

In the UK there no official government newspapers. The government does not exercise any official control over the newspaper industry and most of the English newspapers are very proud of their individual styles.

The British people are probably the greatest newspaper readers in the world. This explains the fact that there are quite a lot of editions of different kind. Generally, all the newspapers are divided into two groups. On the one hand, there are "quality" newspapers, which publish analytical articles on serious topics, involving economy, politics and business issues. Among the "quality" papers are *The Times, The Guardian, The Financial Times, The Independent.* Their circulation is not large, but their reputation is unshakeable.

On the other hand, there are “popular” papers, or “tabloids” which are considered entertaining rather than informative. People buy such kind of papers to learn the latest news on sports events, private life of celebrities and rumors. Their circulation is much larger compared to “quality” papers. They are usually less in size and use large letters for the headings to report sensational news. The newspaper of this kind have the word “Daily” in the name. There are usually a lot of photographs, crosswords, sketches and com mixes in these papers. Among them the most popular are *Daily Express, The Sun, Daily Mail, Private Eye, Daily Mirror, Daily Star* and others.

Besides newspapers of daily circulation, there are also the ones issued on Sundays. These may be either the supplements to the daily papers, or independent Sunday papers, which are larger in size than the daily ones and usually have several separate parts on different topics. They can be called family papers, as there is something to read for each member of the family: love stories, detective stories, facts from history, sport, art and much more. These newspapers contain the word “Sunday” in their title. Besides, there are a great number of all kinds of magazines.

All the newspapers and magazines in the UK are privately owned. Fleet Street in London, which was known as the home of many newspapers, has now lost its prominence – the offices of many newspapers have moved away from London, as the rent is very high.

UK newspapers are generally grouped into three, rather historical, groups – *mass market tabloids*, or *red-tops*, *middle-market tabloids*, and *quality broadsheets*.

Quality newspapers are serious, national, daily newspapers, appealing mainly to the upper and middle classes. They are usually published in a **broadsheet format**. They are “*Financial Times*”, “*The Times*”, “*The Guardian*”, “*The Daily Telegraph*”. “*The Daily Telegraph”* contains reports on national and international news, gives a full covering of sports and other topics. “*Financial Times*” is read mainly by professional and business people as it contains a comprehensive coverage of industry, commerce and public affairs. “*The Guardian*” gives a wide coverage of news events and reports on social issues, the arts, education, etc. “*The Times*” is the most famous

newspaper. It represents the views of the establishment and is well-known for its correspondence column.

In October 2003, quality broadsheet "*The Independent*" began producing what it preferred to call a **compact edition** – tabloid sized** – along with the main broadsheet sized newspaper. This had a stunning effect on circulation – sales went up by 20% year-on-year – and "*The Times*" followed suit launching its own compact edition. Both newspapers are now exclusively available in compact form.

"*The Guardian*", which denounced the original shift to compact, is now thought to be switching to a mid-size format between tabloid and broadsheet, known as the "**Berliner**". This format is also possibly to be used by "*The Daily Telegraph*", though their ownership changes have caused a delay in their adoption.

The mass-market tabloids. Unlike quality newspapers popular newspapers are not so serious and their stories tend to be sensational. The two most-popular newspapers are "*The Sun"* and "*The Daily Mirror*". Bitter rivals, the papers until recently held very differing political views – "*The Sun*" being Conservative (right-wing) since the early 70's, while "*The Mirror*" was Labour (left-wing). Both now appear to support Labour. Historically, "*The Sun*" appears to support the current government.

With the mass-market tabloids, just as in other areas of life, sex sells. "*The Sun*" is home of the famous Page Three girl – an idea used by "*The Mirror*" for a while, but dumped in the 1980's. "*The Daily Star*", a sister paper for the *Daily Express* (originally launched to use spare capacity in the *Express* printing presses), gives its readers regular "StarBirds" throughout its pages and the advertising catch-phrase "Oooh Ahhh Daily Star" (and is, incidentally, a relative success in comparison to "The Express").

The middle-market tabloids, "*The Daily Mail*" and "*The Daily Express*" are concerned with a very different readership – that of affluent women. Weekend supplements and carefully-placed sponsorship ensure that these titles are a cheap alternative to a magazine, while sports supplements aimed at the husband aim to broaden their readership. "*The Daily Mail*" has a staunch right-wing agenda, and is

lampooned by some for their over alarmist headlines, particularly about political asylum seekers. However, its formula, said by former owner Lord Northcliffe to give his readers a "daily hate", has made "*The Daily Mail*" one of the most popular newspapers in the UK.

The broadsheets are probably the most famous to readers overseas. "*The Times*", the UK's oldest national newspaper, is not the most popular – that accolade falls to "*The Daily Telegraph*". It's important to notice, though, that the mass-market tabloids sell up to four times as many copies as the broadsheets.

Many of these daily newspapers have their Sunday counterparts, such as *"The Sunday Times", "The Sunday Telegraph", "The Observer" (sister paper of "the Guardian"), "Independent on Sunday", "Sunday Express"*, etc. The national Sunday titles usually have a different layout and style to their weekly sister papers, and are produced by separate journalistic and editorial staff. They are often larger in size and thicker, contain a lot of supplementary sections and are more colourful.

All the major UK newspapers currently have websites, which provide mostly free access to the content published in their print editions, as well as additional material.

A relatively recent phenomenon in the newspaper industry has been the *free morning papers*. Free weekly papers are fairly common, supported by advertising and carrying little in the way of editorial. But now, with the launch of Associated's "*Metro*" in London, Birmingham and Leeds, a sister paper called "*News*" in Manchester, plus Manchester's own "*Metro News*" and similar titles in Tyneside, Edinburgh and Glasgow, these newspapers thrive on public transport and in busy cities. Giving editorial almost as good as the paid-for dailies, these are a threat to the established titles.

Magazines

The UK has a large magazine industry with hundreds of magazines serving almost every interest – from accountancy, agriculture and technology to sports and lifestyle.

Consumer magazines make up the bulk of the titles for sale in newsagents. They may be general titles that aim to entertain and inform (such as *Loaded*, *Elle*, *Radio Times*) or consumer specialist titles aimed at a specific interest or hobby (*Car*, *Total Film*, *Gardeners' World*). There are about 2,800 UK consumer magazines. These can also be classified by readership into women's (*Cosmopolitan*, *Vogue*, *OK!*, *Tatler*), men's (*FHM*, *Loaded*, *Nuts*), teen (*Mizz Magazine*, *Sugar*) and children's magazines. An important type of consumer magazines is **current affairs magazines**, which provide analysis of current political, economical and cultural events and trends (*The Spectator*, *The Economist*, *The New Statesman*, *The Private Eye*). *The Spectator* was established in 1828 and claims to be the oldest continuously-published magazine in the English language.

Business magazines, which may also be called trade or B2B (business to business) magazines are for people at work. Examples include *Campaign* for the advertising industry, *General Practitioner*, one of several free weekly titles for doctors, and *Press Gazette* for journalists. There are about 5,100 such titles in the UK. While some business magazines are sold in newsagents or bought on subscription, the main distribution channel is controlled circulation, whereby copies are sent free to qualifying individuals and the publisher makes its money through selling advertising. For example, 96% of *Computer Weekly*'s copies go out as controlled circulation, with 1% subscription and 3% news-stand.

Academic journals aim to encourage university-level discussion of all sorts of arcane topics. Their identifying feature is that their subject matter is controlled by an academic board. Members of the board act as referees to vet all the articles. Authors are not paid; rather, they gain academic credibility. Probably the most famous academic journal is *Nature*.

Television listings magazines such as *What's on TV* and *Radio Times* tend to be the best-selling UK magazines with circulations of about one million to 1.5m copies. Women's weeklies are the next big group, led by million-plus-selling Take a Break, with the likes of Chat, Now and Heat selling about 500,000 copies. The biggest monthlies are Reader's Digest, Glamour and FHM, selling 750,000 down to 300,000.

1.2.Television

Broadcasting in the United Kingdom is controlled by the *British Broadcasting Corporation* (BBC) and the *Independent Broadcasting Authority* (IBA). The IBA is responsible for looking after regional independent TV companies and those they have bought from other regions.

UK broadcasting companies and TV channels

Analogue terrestrial television in the United Kingdom is made up of two **public** broadcasting companies, the *BBC* and *Channel 4* and two **commercial** television companies, *ITV* and *Five*. There are five major free-to-air analogue channels: ***BBC One, BBC Two, ITV, Channel 4*** and ***Five***. Analogue terrestrial transmissions are currently being switched off and giving way to **digital**

terrestrial, cable and satellite television. Although a great number of other channels are now available via these new technologies, the five above-mentioned channels remain the most popular (and are also the oldest).

- The **BBC** is the world's oldest and biggest broadcaster, and is the country's first and largest public service broadcaster. The BBC is funded by public money accrued from a **television licence fee** gathered from all UK households with a television set; **it does not carry advertising**. The BBC channels in the UK are *BBC 1*, *BBC 2* (**analogue**), *BBC 3*, *BBC 4*, *CBBC*, *CBeebies*, *BBC News 24 and BBC Parliament* (**digital**).

BBC One – the Corporation's primary network, broadcasting mainstream comedy, drama, documentaries, films, sport, and children's programmes. BBC One is also the home of the BBC's main 30-minutes news bulletins, currently shown at 13.00, 18.00, and 22.00 on weekdays (shorter early- and late-evening bulletins are broadcast on Saturdays and Sundays). The main news bulletins are followed by local news. These are provided by production centres in Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland and a further 14 regional and sub-regional centres in England. Along with the BBC's other domestic television stations, it is funded entirely by the licence fee, and therefore shows uninterrupted programming with **no commercial advertising**. It is currently

the most watched television channel in the United Kingdom, ahead of its traditional rival for ratings leadership, ITV1.

BBC Two **–** home to more specialist programming, including comedy, documentaries, dramas and minority interest programmes, as well as imported programmes from other countries, particularly the United States. An important feature of the schedule is *News night*, a 50-minute news analysis programme shown each weeknight at 22.30. There are slight differences in the programming for England, Wales, Northern Ireland and Scotland.

BBC Three **–** the main digital television network operated by the Corporation, home to mainly youth-oriented programming, particularly new comedy sketch shows and sitcoms.

BBC Four **–** niche programming for an intellectual audience, including specialist documentaries, occasional "serious" dramas, live theatre, foreign language films and television programmes and "prestige" archive television repeats.

CBBC Channel **–** for children aged six and above.

CBeebies **–** for children under six.

BBC News **–** a dedicated news channel.

BBC Parliament **–** the Corporation's dedicated politics channel, covering both the British parliament and international politics.

The most watched digital channels are owned by the six broadcasters above. Other broadcasters who have secured a notable place on British television include **Virgin Media, Viacom, Discovery Networks** and **Disney**.

Radio

There are many hundreds of radio stations in the United Kingdom, the most prominent of which are the **national stations** operated by the BBC.

BBC Radio 1 broadcasts current popular music and chart hits throughout the day. *Radio 1* provides alternative genres after 7:00pm including electronic dance, hip hop, rock or interviews. It is aimed primarily at the 15–29 age group. The station has recorded many live performances and studio sessions, it station also broadcasts some documentaries and interviews. Short news summaries are provided roughly hourly on

the half hour during daytime hours with two 15-minute bulletins at 12:45pm and 5:45pm.

BBC Radio 2 is the UK's **most listened to radio station**, with a mix of music from the last thirty years. The station now has adult listeners, mainly aged 25 and above, although in recent years it has attracted more of younger listeners. Its daytime playlist features music from the 1960s to various current chart hits, album and indie music. The station's appeal is broad and deep, with accessible daytime programmes and specialist programmes of particular types or eras of music.

BBC Radio 3 is a serious classical station, broadcasting high-quality concerts and performances. At night, it transmits a wide range of jazz and world music. The station is the world's most significant commissioner of new music,[2] and its New Generation Artists scheme promotes young musicians of all nationalities.There are regular productions of both classic plays and newly commissioned drama.

BBC Radio 4 is a current affairs and speech station, with news, debate and radio drama. Music and sport are the only fields that largely fall outside the station's remit. It broadcasts the daily radio soap *The Archers*, as well as flagship news programme *Today*. Radio 4 is the second most popular British domestic radio station, after Radio 2

BBC Radio Five Live broadcasts live news and sports commentary with phone-in debates and studio guests. It is the principal radio station covering sport in the United Kingdom, broadcasting virtually all major sports events staged in the UK or involving British competitors.

BBC 6 Musicis one of the BBC's digital radio stations which transmits predominantly alternative rock, punk, jazz, funk, hip hop with many live sessions.

BBC 1Xtra is a digital radio station in the United Kingdom from the BBC specialising in new black music, sometimes referred to as urban music. Typical music includes largely British and North American hip hop, grime, bassline, garage, dubstep, drum and bass, UK funky, dancehall, soca, reggae, gospel music, bhangra and R&B.

BBC 7is a British digital radio station broadcasting comedy, drama, and children's programming nationally 24 hours a day. It is the principal broadcasting outlet for the BBC's archive of spoken-word entertainment, and was established primarily to enable the contents of the BBC Sound Archive to be broadcast.

All of these radio stations can be listened to live via the Internet, some of the programmes are available for listening or downloading from the archives, some are also published in the form of podcasts.

The BBC also provides 40 **local radio services**, mainly broadcasting a mix of local news and music aimed at an older audience.

Also available nationally are three **national commercial channels**, namely ***Absolute Radio***, ***Classic FM*** (the UK's first national commercial radio station, broadcasts a wide range of programming) and ***talk SPORT***.

There are also **local commercial stations**. Most local commercial stations in the United Kingdom broadcast to a city or group of towns within a radius of 20-50 miles, with a second tier of **regional stations** covering larger areas such as North West England. The predominant format is pop music, but many other tastes are also catered for, particularly in London and the larger cities, and on digital radio. Rather than operating as independent entities, many local radio stations are owned by large radio groups which broadcast a similar format to many areas.

1.3. Sport

Sports of all kinds play an important part in many people's lives. There are several sports that are particularly popular in the UK. Many sporting events take place at major stadiums such as Wembley Stadium in London and the Millennium Stadium in Cardiff.

Local governments and private companies provide sports facilities such as swimming pools, tennis courts, football pitches, dry ski slopes and gymnasiums. Many famous sports, including cricket, football, lawn tennis, golf and rugby, began in Britain.

The UK has hosted the Olympic games on three occasions: 1908, 1948 and 2012. The main Olympic site for the 2012 Games was in Stratford, East London. The

British team was very successful, across a wide range of Olympic sports, finishing third in the medal table.

The Paralympic Games for 2012 were also hosted in London. The Paralympics have their origin in the work of Dr Sir Ludwig Guttman, a German refugee, at the Stoke Mandeville hospital in Buckinghamshire. Dr Guttman developed new methods of treatment for people with spinal injuries and encouraged patients to take part in exercise and sport.

Cricket

Cricket originated in England and is now played in many countries. Games can last up to five days but still result in a draw! The idiosyncratic nature of the game and its complex laws are said to reflect the best of the British character and sense of fair play. You may come across expressions such as ‘rain stopped play’, ‘batting on a sticky wicket’, 'playing a straight bat', ‘bowled a googly’ or ‘it’s just not cricket’, which have passed into everyday usage. The most famous competition is the Ashes, which is a series of Test matches played between England and Australia.

Football

Football is the UK’s most popular sport. It has a long history in the UK and the first professional football clubs were formed in the late 19th century.

England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland each have separate leagues in which clubs representing different towns and cities compete. The English Premier League attracts a huge international audience. Many of the best players in the world play in the Premier League. Many UK teams also compete in competitions such as the UEFA (Union of European Football Associations) Champions League, against other teams from Europe. Most towns and cities have a professional club and people take great pride in supporting their home team. There can be great rivalry between different football clubs and among fans.

Each country in the UK also has its own national team that competes with other national teams across the world in tournaments such as the FIFA (Fédération International de Football Association) World Cup and the UEAFA European Football

Championships. England's only international tournament victory was at the World Cup of 1966, hosted in the UK

Football is also a popular sport to play in many local communities, with people playing amateur games every week in parks all over the UK.

Rugby

Rugby originated in England in the early 19th century and is very popular in the UK today. There are two different types of rugby, which have different rules: union and league. Both have separate leagues and national teams in England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland (who play with the Irish Republic). Teams from all countries compete in a range of competitions. The most famous rugby union competition is the Six Nation Championship between England, Ireland, Scotland, Wales, France and Italy. The Super League is the most well-known rugby league (club) competition.

Horse Racing

There is a very long history of horse racing in Britain, with evidence of events taking place as far back as Roman times. The sport has a long association with royalty. There are racecourses all over the UK. Famous horse racing events include: Royal Ascot, a five day race meeting in Berkshire attended by members of the Royal Family; the Grand National at Aintree near Liverpool; and the Scottish Grand National at Ayr. There is a National Horseracing Museum in Newmarket, Suffolk.

Golf

The modern game of golf can be traced back to 15th century Scotland. It is a popular sport played socially as well as professionally. There are public and private golf courses all over the UK. St Andrews in Scotland is known as the home of golf. The Open Championship is the only 'Major' tournament held outside the United States. It is hosted by a different golf course every year.

Tennis

Modern tennis evolved in England in the late 19th century. The first tennis club was founded in Leamington Spa in 1872. The most famous tournament hosted in

Britain is The Wimbledon Championships, which takes place each year at the All England Lawn Tennis and Croquet Club. It is the oldest tennis tournament in the world and the only 'Grand Slam' event played on grass.

Water Sports

Sailing continues to be popular in the UK, reflecting our maritime heritage. A British sailor, Sir Francis Chichester, was the first person to sail single-handed around the world passing the Cape of Good Hope (Africa) and Cape Horn (South America), in 1966/67. Two years later, Sir Robin Knox-Johnston became the first person to do this without stopping. Many sailing events are held throughout the UK, the most famous of which is at Cowes on the Isle of Wight.

Rowing is also popular, both as a leisure activity and as a competitive sport. There is a popular yearly race on the Thames between Oxford and Cambridge Universities.

Motor Sports

There is a long history of motor sport in the UK, for both cars and motor cycles. Motor car racing in the UK started in 1902. The UK continues to be a world leader in the development and manufacture of motor-sport technology. A Formula 1 Grand Prix event is held in the UK each year and a number of British Grand Prix drivers have won the Formula 1 World Championship. Recent British winners include Damon Hill, Lewis Hamilton and Jensen Button.

Skiing

Skiing is increasingly popular in the UK. Many people go abroad to ski and there are also dry ski slopes throughout the UK. Skiing on snow may also be possible during the winter. There are five ski centres in Scotland, as well as Europe's longest dry ski slope near Edinburgh.

🗐Questions:

1.How many kinds of newspapers there are in the UK?
2.How British people categorize newspapers?
3.Which magazine is tend to be the best-selling in UK?
4.Which organizations are responsible for the broadcasting system in UK?
5.What is analogue terrestrial television?
6.Is there any difference in programming between London and other sides of England?

7.How many analogue channels there are in UK?
8.What includes BBC Two?
9.How we can differ analogues from each other?
10.What is the name the most popular radio station in UK?
11.How many radio stations there are in UK?
12.What is the main difference between Radio 3 and Five Live radio?
13.What are the most popular kinds of sport in UK?
14.How many days can last Cricket up to the end of the game?
15.How many national teams in football there are in UK?
16.What is the most oldest sport in UK?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match types of sports (1-7) with their features (a-g)

1. Skiing -
2. Tennis -
3. Cricket –
4. Football –
5. Rugby –
6. Golf –
7. Water sports –

a. originated in England in the early 19th century
b. can be traced back to 15th century Scotland
c. evolved in England in the late 19th century
d. Sir Francis Chichester was the first person to sail single-handed around the world
e. Is increasingly in the UK
f. First professional clubs were formed in the 19th century
g. The most famous competition is the "Ashes"

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. The broadsheets are probably the most popular locally.
2. Many of these daily newspapers have their Sunday counterparts, such as *"The Sunday Times", "The Sunday Telegraph", "The Observer" (sister paper of "the Guardian"), "Independent on Sunday", "Sunday Express"*, etc.
3. The national Sunday titles usually have a unique template.
4. They are often smaller in size and thicker, contain a lot of supplementary sections and are more white-and-black.

5. Most of the major UK newspapers currently have websites, which provide mostly free access to the content published in their print editions, as well as additional material.

III. Fill the gaps

Regional, broadcast, local, catered, independent, commercial

There are also _____ **commercial stations**. Most local _____ stations in the United Kingdom broadcast to a city or group of towns within a radius of 20-50 miles, with a second tier of _____ **stations** covering larger areas such as North West England. The predominant format is pop music, but many other tastes are also _____ for, particularly in London and the larger cities, and on digital radio. Rather than operating as _____ entities, many local radio stations are owned by large radio groups which _____ a similar format to many areas.

Vocabulary:

Gymnasium –гимназия - gimnaziya
Association –ассоицая - assotsiatsiya
Host –принимать – qabul qilmoq
Refugee –беженец - qochoq
Spinal – спинальный - orqadagi
Fair – честный - adolatli
Audience – аудитория - tomoshabinlar
Pride – гордость – faxr
Rivalry – соперничество - raqobat
Amateur – любитель - havaskor
Well-known – известный - mashhur
Evidence –доказательства –dalil

THEME 9. British Customs and traditions.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. Cultural life

1.2. Holidays

Key words : Festival, bagpipes, buttonhole, procession, warp up, cracker, mince pie, pagan, resurrection, fireworks, bonfire, anonymous, convey, fairs, parades.

1.1. Cultural life

Annual festivals of music and drama are very popular in Britain. Some of them are famous not only in Britain, but all over the world.

Burn's night. January 25 is the birthday of Scotland's greatest poet Robert Burns. There are hundreds of Burns clubs not only in Britain, but also throughout the world, and on the 25th of January they all hold Burns Night celebrations. Thousands of people drink a toast to the immortal memory of Robert Burns. To the sound of the bagpipes, there appear on the tables the traditional dishes of the festival dinner: chicken broth, boiled salt-herring, and haggis a typical Scottish dish made from the heart and other organs of a sheep. It is eaten with boiled turnip and potatoes. The dinner is followed by dancing, pipe music, and reciting selections from Burn's lyrics. The celebration concludes with singing the poet's famous Auld Lang Syne.

Shakespeare's Birthday. Every year the anniversary of the birth if William Shakespeare is celebrated in Stradford-upon-Avon, where he was born on April 23, 1564. Flags are hung in the main street; people wear spring of rosemary (for remembrance) in their buttonholes. A long procession goes along the street s to the church where everyone in the procession puts a wreath or a bouquet, or just one flower at the poet's grave. In the evening there is a performance of the chosen Birthday Play in the Royal Shakespeare Theatre.

In London the Aldwych Theatre which has close ties with the Royal Shakespeare Theatre in Stradford-upon-Avon, holds International Shakespeare festivals, during which famous companies from abroad, including the comedie Francaise from Paris, the Moscow Art Theatre. The Schiller Theatre of Berlin, the Abbey Theatre from Dublin, and others, perform Shakespeare's plays.

The Edinburgh International Festival is held annually during three weeks in late August and early September. The Festival is quite international in its character, as it gives a varied representation of artistic production from many countries. Leading musicians of the world and world-famous theatre companies always take part in it.

The first Festival was held in 1947, and since that time, the Edinburgh International festival has firmly established its reputation as one of the important events of its kind in the world.

1.2. Holidays

In the matter of holidays, the British are less well-off than other Europeans. Most people have only three weeks paid holiday per year, and the bank holidays put Britain at the bottom of the list of Common market countries as far as public holidays are concerned British ‘bank holidays ‘are

New Year’s Day, Good Friday, Raster Monday, May Day, Spring Bank Holiday, Summer Bank Holiday, Christmas Day and Boxing Day. Only when the UK joined the E.E.C. New Year’s Day became a public holiday. The patron saints days are not celebrated with a holiday. They are St. David’s Day (March First) in Wales, St. George’s Day (April 23 rd) in England and St.Andrew’s Day (November 30th) in Scotland. Only Ireland, both March and South, has a holiday on St. Patrick’s Day, March 17th

Christmas

If you try to catch a train on 24 the of December you may have difficulty in finding a seat. This is the day when many people are traveling home to be with their families on Christmas Day, 25 the December. For most British families, this is the most important festivities of winter.

On the Sunday before Christmas many churches hold a carol service where special hymns are Sung. Sometimes carol-singers can be heard on the streets as they collect money for charity. People are reminded of Charles Dickens story ‘’Christmas Carol’’.

Most families decorate their houses with brightly-colored paper or holly, and they usually have a Christmas tree in the corner of the front room, glittering with colored lights and decorations.

There are a lot of traditions connected with Christmas hut perhaps the most important one is the giving of presents. Family members warp up their gifts and leave them at the bottom of the Christmas tree to be found on Christmas Eve, 24th December, hoping that Father Christmas will come down the chimney during the night and bring them small presents, fruit and nuts. They are usually not disappointed! At some time on Christmas Day the family will sit down to a big turkey dinner followed by Christmas pudding. They will probably pull a cracker with another

member of the family. It will make a loud crack and a coloured hat. Small toy and joke will fall out!

Later in the afternoon they may watch the Queen on the television as she delivers her traditional Christmas message to the United Kingdom and the Commonwealth. If they have room for even more food they may enjoy a piece of Christmas cake or eat a hot mince pie. 26th December is also a public holiday. Boxing Day and this is the time to visit friends and relatives, or watch football.

Hogmanay and First Footing

At midnight on 31st December throughout Great Britain people celebrate the coming of the New Year, by holding hands in a large circle and singing the song ‘Auld Lang Syne’ “For auld lang syne’ means ‘in memory of past times’ and the words were written by Scotland’s most famous poet, Robert Burns. He wrote much of his poetry in the Scots dialect of English.

New Year‘s Eve is a more important festival in Scotland than it is in England, and it even has a special name. It is not clear where the word ‘Hogmanay” comes from, but it is connected with the provision of food and drink for all visitors to your home on 31st December.

It was believed that the first person to visit one’s house on New Year’s Day could bring good or bad luck. Therefore, people tried to arrange for the person of their own choice to be standing outside their houses ready to be let in the moment midnight had come. Usually a dark complexioned man was chosen, and never a woman, for she would bring bad luck. The first footer was required to carry tree articles: a piece of coal to wish warmth, a piece of bread to wish food, and a silver coin to wish wealth. In parts of northern England this pleasing customs is still observed.

Easter

Although the Christmas religion gave the world Easter as we know it today, the celebration owes its name and many of its customs and symbols to a pagan festival called Eostre. Eoster, the Anglo-Saxon goddess of springtime and sunrise, got her name from the word east, where the sun rises. Every spring northern European

peoples celebrate the festival of Eostre to honour the awakening of new life in nature. Christmas related the rising of the sun to the resurrection of Jesus and their own spiritual rebirth.

Many modern Easter symbols come from pagan times. The egg, for instance, was a fertility symbol long before the Christian era. The ancient Persians, Greeks, and Chinese exchanged eggs at their spring festivals. In Christian times the egg took on a new meaning symbolizing the tomb from which Christ rose. The ancient customs of dyeing eggs at Easter time is still very popular.

The Easter bunny also originated in pre-Christian fertility lore. The rabbit was the most fertile animal our ancestors knew, so they selected it as a symbol of new life. Today, children enjoy eating candy bunnies and listening to stories about the Raster bunny, who supposedly brings Easter eggs in a fancy basket.

Egg - Rolling

Egg-rolling is a traditional Easter pastime which still flourishes in northern England, Scotland, Ulster, the Isle of Man, and Switzerland. It takes place on Easter Sunday or Monday, and consists of rolling coloured, hard-boiled eggs down a slope until they are cracked and broken after which they are eaten by their owners. In some districts, this is a competitive game, the winner being the player whose egg remains longest undamaged, but more usually, the fun consists simply of the rolling and eating. This is evidently the older from of the customs, since egg rolling does not appear to have been originally a game to be lost or won. In the Hebrides, formerly, it provided an opportunity for divination. Each player marked his or her egg with an identifying sign, and then watched to see how it fared as it sped down the slope. If it reached the bottom unscathed, the owner could expect good luck in the future, but if it was broken, misfortune would follow before the year was out. Similarly, at Connell Ferry in Argyllshire, where it was customary for young men to roll their eggs in one place, and for young women to roll them in another, the man or girl whose egg went farthest and most smoothly would be the first person to marry in that particular group.

May Day Celebrations

The beautiful springtime festival of May Day is observed in every nation, each according to its own customs and traditions. In most countries on May 1st a new life begins for both nature and man.

May Day is more important in Northern Europe than in warmer countries farther south. People grow tried of snow and ice short winter days to which May Day signifies an end. The people of Belgium welcome spring with parades and fairs. Holland celebrates with tulip festivals and in Switzerland people offer up special May Day prayers. In France people buy flowers at sidewalk stands. They wear them and give them to their friends for luck.

As summer comes, Britain likes to celebrate the end of winter. Much of this celebration is connected with dancing, which is performed to encourage life and growth and drive away harmful spirits. Children may be seen dancing round the Maypole on village greens, weaving their bright-coloured scarves into a beautiful pattern. Morris men dance all day long on May 1st waving their handkerchiefs to drive away the evil spirits and welcome in the new ones.

St. Valentine's Day

February 14th is the day on which young lovers in England send each other anonymous Valentines –bright, lacy, coloured cards, with loving emblems and amorous doggerel.

The shops are full of these cards.

The message the Valentine conveys is simple. Love's message has always been so.

The fifth of November – Guy Fawkes Day

There is a special day in England, which is called Guy Fawkes Day.

On the fifth of November every year English boys and girl carry funny figures about the streets. These figures are made of straw and dressed in an old coat and a hat, with a mask for a face.

The children expect people to give them some money, which is spent on fireworks. In the evening a bonfire is made, and the figures are burnt on it. Each of these figures is called guy fawkes.

On November 5, 1605, Guy Fawkes and some other people planned to blow up the English Parliament. The plot was discovered and Guy Fawkes was hanged. At the moment of his arrest he wore a mask on his face.

So ever since, as November 5th approaches, children let off fireworks and burn stew figures on a big bonfire.

Spring Bank Holiday

Is celebrated on the last Monday in May. It is an official holiday, when all the offices are closed and people don't go to work.

Late Summer Bank Holiday

Is another official or public holiday, and it is celebrated on the last Monday in August.

🗐**Questions:**

1. When is Burn's Night celebrated?
2. What traditional dishes does this holiday consist of?
3. Where is Shakespeare's birthday celebrated?
4. Why is Edinburgh festival international?
5. What holidays does UK have?
6. What do people do on 24th December?
7. Why did they call this holiday "Christmas"?
8. How did most families decorate their houses?
9. When comes the Christmas Eve?
10. Who congratulates on Christmas in the afternoon?
11. Who is Hogmanay?
12. What did three articles mean when the first footer required to carry?
13. Who is celebrated Easter? When was celebrated this holiday?
14. Why does an egg symbolize in this day?
15. Which are holidays having in springtime?
16. What kind of holiday is celebrated in the 14th February?
17. How is the special day called that boys and girls celebrate every year?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match holidays (1-6) with their features (a-f)

1. Egg-rolling holiday
2. Easter
3. Christmas
4. Christmas Eve
5. First Footing

6. Guy Fawkes Day

a. It is celebrated on the 5th of November.

b. A traditional Easter pastime which still flourishes in northern England, Scotland, Ulster, the Isle of Man, and Switzerland.

c. The first footer was required to carry tree articles: a piece of coal to wish warmth, a piece of bread to wish food, and a silver coin to wish wealth.

d. 24th of December is this special holiday.

e. Easter bunny is a fertility symbol in this holiday.

f. This holiday is not celebrated in a day.

II.Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. Easter was originated due to Islam.
2. A pagan festival influenced on the origins of Easter.
3. Easter is celebrated to honour the awakening of the nature.
4. The ancient Greeks and Chinese kept eggs at home and didn't give them others.
5. Egg-rolling is an Easter pastime.

III. Fill the gaps

Holland, springtime, signifies, nation, luck

The beautiful _____ festival of May Day is observed in every _____, each according to its own customs and traditions. In most countries on May 1st a new life begins for both nature and man.

May Day is more important in Northern Europe than in warmer countries farther south. People grow tired of snow and ice short winter days to which May Day _____ an end. The people of Belgium welcome spring with parades and fairs. _____ celebrates with tulip festivals and in Switzerland people offer up special May Day prayers. In France people buy flowers at sidewalk stands. They wear them and give them to their friends for _____.

Vocabulary:

Offer –предложить – taklif qilmoq
East – восток - Sharq
Parade – парад - parad
Awaken – пробуждать – uyg’otmoq
Honour – почтить – sharaflamoq
Signify – означать – ma’no anglatmoq
Simply – просто - shunchaki
Welcome – приветствовать – qarshi olmoq
Fair – ярмарка - yarmarka
Observe –наблюдать - kuzatmoq

CHAPTER II. UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

THEME 1. The USA – General information.

Questions to be discussed:

1. *Background information on the USA*
2. *Geography*
3. *Population*

Keywords: States of the US, Washington D.C., wildlife, population, language

1.1. Background information on the USA

The United States of America (USA), commonly known as the United States (U.S. or US) or America, is a country comprising 50 states, a federal district, five major self-governing territories, and various possessions. At 3.8 million square miles (9.8 million km2), the United States is the world's third or fourth largest country by total area[d] and is slightly smaller than the entire continent of Europe's 3.9 million square miles (10.1 million km2). With a population of over 327 million people, the U.S. is the third most populous country. The capital is Washington, D.C., and the largest city by population is New York City. Forty-eight states and the capital's federal district are contiguous in North America between Canada and Mexico. The State of Alaska is in the northwest corner of North America, bordered by Canada to the east and across the Bering Strait from Russia to the west. The State of Hawaii is an archipelago in the

mid-Pacific Ocean. The U.S. territories are scattered about the Pacific Ocean and the Caribbean Sea, stretching across nine official time zones. The extremely diverse geography, climate, and wildlife of the United States make it one of the world's 17 megadiverse countries.

Paleo-Indians migrated from Siberia to the North American mainland at least 12,000 years ago. European colonization began in the 16th century. The United States emerged from the thirteen British colonies established along the East Coast. Following the French and Indian War, numerous disputes between Great Britain and the colonies led to the American Revolution, which began in 1775, and the subsequent Declaration of Independence in 1776. The war ended in 1783 with the United States becoming the first country to gain independence from a European power. The current constitution was adopted in 1788, with the first ten amendments, collectively named the Bill of Rights, being ratified in 1791 to guarantee many fundamental civil liberties. The United States embarked on a vigorous expansion across North America throughout the 19th century, acquiring new territories, displacing Native American tribes, and gradually admitting new states until it spanned the continent by 1848.

During the second half of the 19th century, the Civil War led to the abolition of slavery. By the end of the century, the United States had extended into the Pacific Ocean, and its economy, driven in large part by the Industrial Revolution, began to soar. The Spanish–American War and World War I confirmed the country's status as a global military power. The United States emerged from World War II as a global superpower, the first country to develop nuclear weapons, the only country to use them in warfare, and a permanent member of the United Nations Security Council. Sweeping civil rights legislation, notably the Civil Rights Act of 1964, the Voting Rights Act of 1965 and the Fair Housing Act of 1968, outlawed discrimination based on race or color. During the Cold War, the United States and the Soviet Union competed in the Space Race, culminating with the 1969 U.S. Moon landing. The end of the Cold War and the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1991 left the United States as the world's sole superpower.

The United States is the world's oldest surviving federation. It is a federal republic and a representative democracy. The United States is a founding member of the United Nations, World Bank, International Monetary Fund, Organization of American States (OAS), and other international organizations. The United States is a highly developed country, with the world's largest economy by nominal GDP and second-largest economy by PPP, accounting for approximately a quarter of global GDP. The U.S. economy is largely post-industrial, characterized by the dominance of services and knowledge-based activities, although the manufacturing sector remains the second-largest in the world.The United States is the world's largest importer and the second largest exporter of goods, by value. Although its population is only 4.3% of the world total, the U.S. holds 31% of the total wealth in the world, the largest share of global wealth concentrated in a single country.

Despite income and wealth disparities, the United States continues to rank very high in measures of socioeconomic performance, including average wage, human development, per capita GDP, and worker productivity. The United States is the foremost military power in the world, making up a third of global military spending, and is a leading political, cultural, and scientific force internationally.

1.2.Geography.

The land area of the entire United States is approximately 3,800,000 square miles (9,841,955 km2), with the contiguous United States making up 2,959,064 square miles (7,663,940.6 km2) of that. Alaska, separated from the contiguous United States by Canada, is the largest state at 663,268 square miles (1,717,856.2 km2). Hawaii, occupying an archipelago in the central Pacific, southwest of North America, is 10,931 square miles (28,311 km2) in area. The populated territories of Puerto Rico, American Samoa, Guam, Northern Mariana Islands, and U.S. Virgin Islands together cover 9,185 square miles (23,789 km2).Measured by only land area, the United States is third in size behind Russia and China, just ahead of Canada.

The United States is the world's third- or fourth-largest nation by total area (land and water), ranking behind Russia and Canada and just above or below China. The ranking varies depending on how two territories disputed by China and India are

counted, and how the total size of the United States is measured. The Encyclopedia Britannica, for instance, lists the size of the United States as 3,677,649 square miles (9,525,067 km2), as they do not count the country's coastal or territorial waters. The World Factbook, which includes those waters, gives 3,796,742 square miles (9,833,517 km2).

The coastal plain of the Atlantic seaboard gives way further inland to deciduous forests and the rolling hills of the Piedmont. The Appalachian Mountains divide the eastern seaboard from the Great Lakes and the grasslands of the Midwest. The Mississippi–Missouri River, the world's fourth longest river system, runs mainly north–south through the heart of the country. The flat, fertile prairie of the Great Plains stretches to the west, interrupted by a highland region in the southeast.

The Rocky Mountains, at the western edge of the Great Plains, extend north to south across the country, reaching altitudes higher than 14,000 feet (4,300 m) in Colorado.Farther west are the rocky Great Basin and deserts such as the Chihuahua and Mojave. The Sierra Nevada and Cascade mountain ranges run close to the Pacific coast, both ranges reaching altitudes higher than 14,000 feet (4,300 m). The lowest and highest points in the contiguous United States are in the state of California, and only about 84 miles (135 km) apart. At an elevation of 20,310 feet (6,190.5 m), Alaska's Denali (Mount McKinley) is the highest peak in the country and North America. Active volcanoes are common throughout Alaska's Alexander and Aleutian Islands, and Hawaii consists of volcanic islands. The supervolcano underlying Yellowstone National Park in the Rockies is the continent's largest volcanic feature. The United States has the most ecoregions out of any country in the world.

The United States, with its large size and geographic variety, includes most climate types. To the east of the 100th meridian, the climate ranges from humid continental in the north to humid subtropical in the south. The Great Plains west of the 100th meridian are semi-arid. Much of the Western mountains have an alpine climate. The climate is arid in the Great Basin, desert in the Southwest, Mediterranean in coastal California, and oceanic in coastal Oregon and Washington and southern Alaska. Most of Alaska is subarctic or polar. Hawaii and the southern tip of Florida are tropical, as

are the populated territories in the Caribbean and the Pacific. Extreme weather is not uncommon—the states bordering the Gulf of Mexico are prone to hurricanes, and most of the world's tornadoes occur in the country, mainly in Tornado Alley areas in the Midwest and South.

Wildlife

The bald eagle has been the national bird of the United States since 1782.

The U.S. ecology is diverse: about 17,000 species of vascular plants occur in the contiguous United States and Alaska, and over 1,800 species of flowering plants are found in Hawaii, few of which occur on the mainland. The United States is home to 428 mammal species, 784 bird species, 311 reptile species, and 295 amphibian species. About 91,000 insect species have been described. The bald eagle is both the national bird and national animal of the United States, and is an enduring symbol of the country itself.

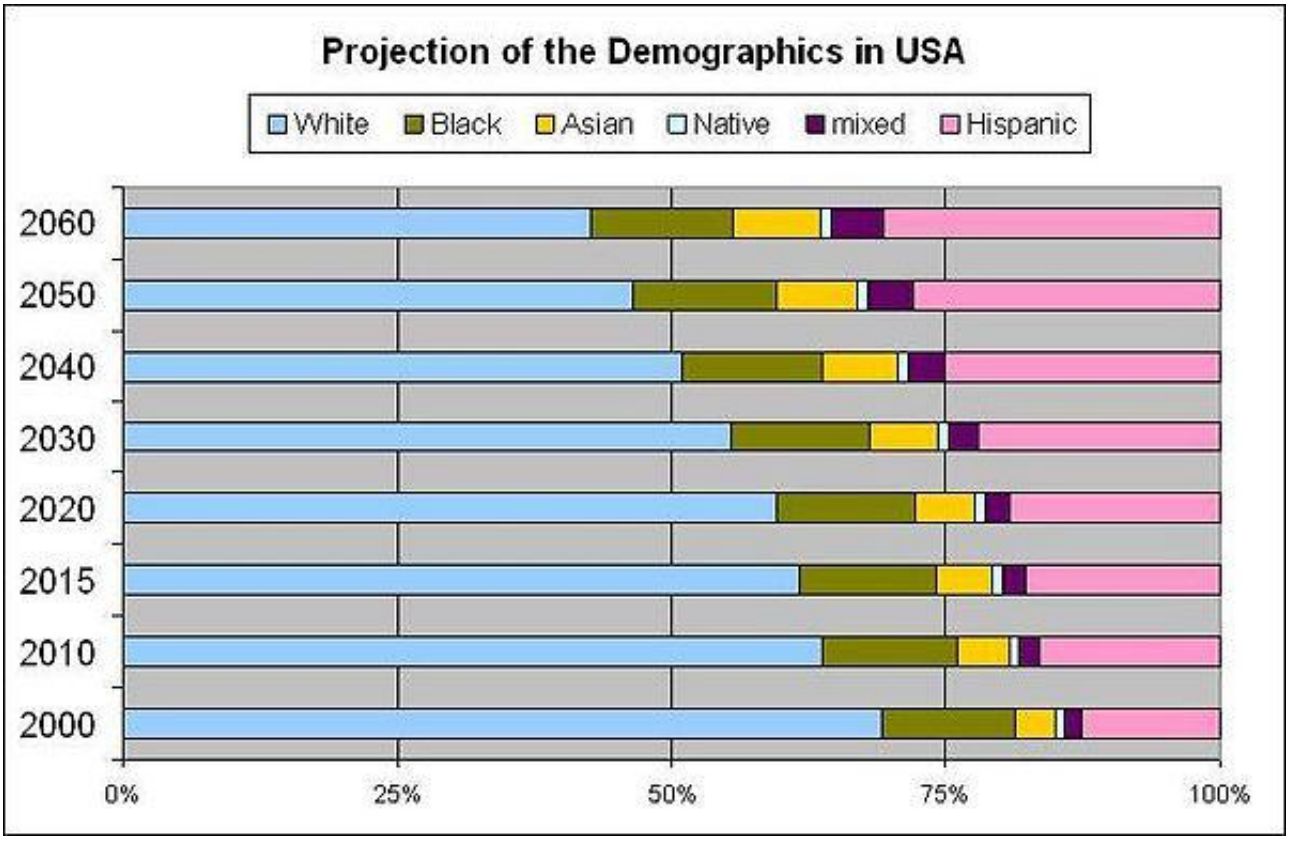
There are 59 national parks and hundreds of other federally managed parks, forests, and wilderness areas. Altogether, the government owns about 28% of the country's land area. Most of this is protected, though some is leased for oil and gas drilling, mining, logging, or cattle ranching; about .86% is used for military purposes.

Environmental issues have been on the national agenda since 1970. Environmental controversies include debates on oil and nuclear energy, dealing with air and water pollution, the economic costs of protecting wildlife, logging and deforestation, and international responses to global warming. Many federal and state agencies are involved. The most prominent is the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), created by presidential order in 1970. The idea of wilderness has shaped the management of public lands since 1964, with the Wilderness Act. The Endangered Species Act of 1973 is intended to protect threatened and endangered species and their habitats, which are monitored by the United States Fish and Wildlife Service.

1.3. Population

The U.S. Census Bureau estimated the country's population to be 327,167,434 as of July 1, 2018, and to be adding 1 person (net gain) every 13 seconds, or about 6,646 people per day. The U.S. population almost quadrupled during the 20th century, from

76.2 million in 1900 to 281.4 million in 2000. The third most populous nation in the world, after China and India, the United States is the only major industrialized nation in which large population increases are projected. In the 1800s the average woman had 7.04 children; by the 1900s this number had decreased to 3.56. Since the early 1970s the birth rate has been below the replacement rate of 2.1 with 1.76 children per woman in 2017. Foreign-born immigration has caused the U.S. population to continue its rapid increase with the foreign-born population doubling from almost 20 million in 1990 to over 40 million in 2010, representing one-third of the population increase. The foreign-born population reached 45 million in 2015.The United States has a very diverse population; 37 ancestry groups have more than one million members. German Americans are the largest ethnic group (more than 50 million) – followed by Irish Americans (circa 37 million), Mexican Americans (circa 31 million) and English Americans (circa 28 million).



White Americans (mostly European ancestry group with 73.1% of total population) are the largest racial group; black Americans are the nation's largest racial minority

(note that in the U.S. Census, Hispanic and Latino Americans are counted as an ethnic group, not a "racial" group), and third-largest ancestry group. Asian Americans are the country's second-largest racial minority; the three largest Asian American ethnic groups are Chinese Americans, Filipino Americans, and Indian Americans. According to a 2015 survey, the largest American community with European ancestry is German Americans, which consists of more than 14% of the total population. In 2010, the U.S. population included an estimated 5.2 million people with some American Indian or Alaska Native ancestry (2.9 million exclusively of such ancestry) and 1.2 million with some native Hawaiian or Pacific island ancestry (0.5 million exclusively).The census counted more than 19 million people of "Some Other Race" who were "unable to identify with any" of its five official race categories in 2010, over 18.5 million (97%) of whom are of Hispanic ethnicity.

English (American English) is the de facto national language. Although there is no official language at the federal level, some laws—such as U.S. naturalization requirements—standardize English. In 2010, about 230 million, or 80% of the population aged five years and older, spoke only English at home. Spanish, spoken by 12% of the population at home, is the second most common language and the most widely taught second language. Some Americans advocate making English the country's official language, as it is in 32 states.

Both Hawaiian and English are official languages in Hawaii, by state law. Alaska recognizes twenty Native languages as well as English. While neither has an official language, New Mexico has laws providing for the use of both English and Spanish, as Louisiana does for English and French. Other states, such as California, mandate the publication of Spanish versions of certain government documents including court forms.

Several insular territories grant official recognition to their native languages, along with English: Samoan is officially recognized by American Samoa. Chamorro is an official language of Guam. Both Carolinian and Chamorro have official recognition in the Northern Mariana Islands. Spanish is an official language of Puerto Rico and is more widely spoken than English there.

The most widely taught foreign languages in the United States, in terms of enrollment numbers from kindergarten through university undergraduate education, are: Spanish (around 7.2 million students), French (1.5 million), and German (500,000). Other commonly taught languages (with 100,000 to 250,000 learners) include Latin, Japanese, ASL, Italian, and Chinese. 18% of all Americans claim to speak at least one language in addition to English.

🗐**Questions:**

1. What is the territory of the USA? (Borders of the USA.)
2. What is the climate of the USA?
3. Name the major rivers and lakes of the USA.
4. What can you say about the major metropolitan areas of the USA?
5. What is the population of the USA?
6. How many whites and blacks live in the country?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match native languages (1-4) with areas (a-d)

1.	Samoan	a.	Puerto Rico
2.	Chamorro	b.	Northern Mariana Islands
3.	Carolinian and Chamorro	c.	American Samoa
4.	Spanish	d.	Guam
5.	Hawaiian and English	e.	Hawaii

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. The United States is one of newest surviving federations.
2. The United States is a federal republic and a representative democracy.
3. The United States is the world's largest importer and the fourth largest exporter of goods, by value.
4. Both Hawaiian and English are most common languages in Hawaii.
5. Alaska recognizes thirty Native languages as well as English.

III. Fill the gaps

Country, smaller, bordered, diverse, districts, capital

The United States of America (USA), commonly known as the United States (U.S. or US) or America, is a _____ comprising 50 states, a federal district, five major self-governing territories, and various possessions. At 3.8 million square miles (9.8 million km2), the United States is the world's third or fourth largest country by total area[d] and is slightly _____ than the entire continent of Europe's 3.9 million square miles (10.1 million km2). With a population of over 327 million people, the U.S. is the third most populous country. The _____ is Washington, D.C., and the largest city by population is New York City. Forty-eight states and the capital's federal _____ are contiguous in North America between Canada and Mexico. The State of Alaska is in the northwest corner of North America, _____ by Canada to the east and across the Bering Strait from Russia to the west. The State of Hawaii is an archipelago in the mid-Pacific Ocean. The U.S. territories are scattered about the Pacific Ocean and the Caribbean Sea, stretching across nine official time zones. The extremely _____ geography, climate, and wildlife of the United States make it one of the world's 17 megadiverse countries.

Vocabulary:

Contiguous – сопредельный - chegadarosh
Comprise – включать – o'z ichiga kiritmoq
Possession – владение - egalik
Self-governing – самоуправление – o'zini boshqarish
Acquire – приобретать – sotib olmoq
Dominance – господство - dominantlik
Outlaw – вне закона - noqonuniy
Dispute – спор – kelishmovchilik
Altitude – высота – balandlik
Prone – склонный– moyil

THEME 2. History of the USA revealed.

Questions to be discussed:

1. *1.1. America before colonial times*
2. *1.2. European Discovery*
3. *1.3. The Colonial Heritage*

1.4. The Movement for Independence

1.5. The Civil War and Reconstruction

1.6. A New Place in the World.

1.7. *The United States in World War* II

Key words: great nation, Indians, they founded cities; Columbus, San Salvador,13 British colonies, July 4, Declaration of Independence, Civil War, World War

The history of the United States is the story of a great nation that was carved out of a wilderness by a brave and freedom-loving people. The men and women who built the United States came from almost every part of the world. They represented many different nationalities and religions. Through the years, the people and their descendants learned to live and work together, and to take pride in being Americans. This spirit of cooperation and pride helped make the United States the huge, powerful, and wealthy nation it is today. It also helped the country and its people survive many challenges and hardships - including dangers in the wilderness, wars, social turmoil, and economic depressions.

1.1. America before colonial times.

For thousands of years, Indians were the only inhabitants of the Western Hemisphere. Most scientists believe they wandered into North America from Asia about 15,000 years ago. They spread across the hemisphere to the tip of South America. Probably about 6,000 years ago, Eskimos—another Asian people—moved to the Western Hemisphere. They soon spread eastward across the Arctic part of North America. They remained only in the far north, near the Arctic Circle.

The first Americans

Indigenous people

Chief Quanah Parker

As many as 80 million Indians may have been living in America when Columbus reached the New World. As many as 65 million Indians lived between what is now Mexico and the tip of South America. As many as 15 million Indians lived in what are now the United States and Canada. The American Indians formed hundreds of tribes, with many different languages and ways of life. Some tribes in the south including the Aztec, Inca, and Maya established advanced civilizations

They founded cities that had huge, magnificent buildings. They also accumulated gold, jewels, and other riches. Most American Indians, in the north of Mexico, lived in small villages. They hunted game and raised such crops as maize (corn), beans, and squash. Some tribes traveled in search of food and never established permanent settlements.

1.2. European Discovery.

The Vikings.

About A.D. 1000, Vikings from Greenland explored part of the North American mainland-probably what is now Newfoundland, Canada. Led by Leif Ericson, they were probably the first white people to reach the mainland of the continent. But the Vikings did not establish permanent settlements, and their voyages were soon forgotten.

The Mayflower, which transported Pilgrims to the New World, arrived in 1620

Before Columbus' voyage, Europeans did not know the Western Hemisphere existed. During the 1400's, Europeans became interested in finding a short sea route to the Far East-a region of spices and other valuable goods.

Columbus, an Italian navigator, believed he could find a short route to the East by sailing west. Financed by the Spanish king and queen, he set sail westward from Spain on August 3, 1492. Columbus reached land on October 12, and assumed he had arrived in the Far East. Actually, he landed on San Salvador, one of the islands just east of the North American mainland.

Columbus died in 1506. He believed that he had sailed to an unknown land in the Far East. Other Europeans called this unexplored area the **New World** and honored Columbus as its discoverer. Europeans also called the Western Hemisphere **America**, after Amerigo Vespucci. An Italian, Vespucci claimed he made voyages to the New World for Spain and Portugal beginning in 1497.

1.3. *The Colonial Heritage*

The Thirteen Colonies.

In the early 1600’s, the British king began granting charters for the purpose of establishing colonies in America. The charters went to companies of merchants and to individuals called **proprietors**. The merchants and proprietors were responsible for recruiting people to settle in America and, at first, for governing them.

By the mid-1700’s, most of the settlements had been formed into 13 British colonies. Each colony had a governor and legislature, but each was under the ultimate control of the British government. (You can see it on the map given abow.)

The 13 colonies stretched from what is now Maine in the north to Georgia in the south. They included the New England Colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire in the far north; the Middle Colonies of New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania and Delaware; Virginia and Maryland along Chesapeake Bay; and the Southern Colonies of North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia in the far south.

Life in Colonial America

Europeans knew that a person who went to America faced great hardship and danger. But the New World also offered people the opportunity for a new start in life. As a result, many people were eager to become colonists. Some Europeans came to America seeking religious freedom. Other Europeans became colonists for economic reasons. Some were well enough off, but saw America as a place where they could become rich. Many poor Europeans also became colonists. Most of them came to America as indentured servants. An indentured servant agreed to work for another person, called a master, in America. In return, the master paid for the servant's transportation and provided the servant with food, clothing, and shelter. Most agreements between servants and masters lasted about four years, after which the servants were free to work for themselves.

Economic and social opportunity.

Colonial America, like Europe, had both wealthy upper-class people and poor lower-class people. But in Europe, old traditions made economic and social advancement rare. America had no such traditions. Advancement was possible for everyone willing to work hard except slaves. In the New World, land was plentiful and easy to obtain, and there were many opportunities to start new businesses. Indentured servants often obtained land or worked in a trade after their period of service ended. Often, they or their sons became well-to-do merchants or landowners. The colonies had a great need for professional people, such as lawyers, physicians, schoolteachers, and members of the clergy. Because little training was required for these jobs, they were open to almost everyone.

The Colonists and Government.

The colonists rejected the old idea that government was an institution inherited from the past. Instead, they regarded it as something they themselves had created for their own use. The colonists lived under British rule. But to them, laws made in Britain meant little until they were enforced on the spot. They often ignored British laws. This independent attitude would soon lead to a clash between the Americans and the British.

1.4. The Movement for Independence

Colonial Reaction.

The colonists bitterly opposed the new British policies. They claimed that the British government had no right to restrict their settlement or deny their freedom in any other way. They also strongly opposed British taxes. The colonists were not represented in Parliament. Therefore, they argued, Britain had no right to tax them.

The Declaration of Independence.

On July 4, 1776, the Second Continental Congress officially declared independence and formed the United States of America by adopting the Declaration of Independence. Written by Thomas Jefferson of Virginia, the declaration was a sweeping indictment of the king, Parliament, and the British people. It also set forth certain self-evident truths that were basic to the revolutionary cause. It said that all men are created equal, and are endowed by their Creator with rights to life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. To protect those rights, men organized governments, and the governments derived their powers from the consent of the governed. But when a government ceased to preserve the rights, it was the duty of the people to change the government, or abolish it and form a new one.

Thus the colonists were fighting for philosophical principles as well as specific objectives. The spirit aroused by the Declaration of Independence was an important factor in the ultimate American victory.

Declaration of Independence, by John Trumbull, 1817–18

Victory over a Great Empire.

The Americans were challenging the world's most powerful empire in the Revolutionary War. They lacked a well-trained army, officers who were accustomed to commanding troops, and munitions and money. But they had the advantage of fighting on their home territory. The British, on the other hand, had well-trained and well-equipped troops and officers, but they were fighting in an unfamiliar land thousands of miles from home. The American cause was also helped by aid from France and other European nations that opposed Britain. The Revolutionary War raged on through the 1770s. Then, on Oct. 19, 1781, the Americans won a decisive victory at the Battle of Yorktown in Virginia. Thousands of British soldiers surrendered there. Within months, the British government decided to seek peace. Two years of peace negotiations and occasional fighting followed. Finally, On Sept. 3, 1783, the Americans and the British signed the Treaty of Paris of 1783, officially ending the Revolutionary War.

Forming a New Nation.

The original 13 colonies made up the first 13 states of the United States. Eventually, the American land west of the Appalachian Mountains was divided into territories.

In 1787, American leaders got together and wrote the Constitution of the United States. The Constitution became the country's basic law and welded it together into a solid political unit. The men who wrote it included some of the most famous and important figures in American history. Among them were George Washington and

James Madison of Virginia, Alexander Hamilton of New York, and Benjamin Franklin of Pennsylvania.

Establishing a Government.

The American people began setting up a new system of government as soon as they declared their independence. Each of the new states had its own constitution before the Revolutionary War ended. The state constitutions gave the people certain liberties, usually including freedom of speech, religion, and the press. In 1781, the states set up a federal government under laws called the Articles of Confederation.

Expansion.

During the early 1800s, settlers by the thousands moved westward over the Appalachian Mountains into the new states and territories. Many of these pioneers even settled beyond the country's western boundary. They flocked into Texas, California, and other western lands belonging to Mexico. Americans also settled in the Oregon Country, a large territory between California and Alaska claimed by both Britain and the United States. During the mid-1800's, the United States gained control of the Mexican lands and the southern part of the Oregon Country, and the nation extended from coast to coast.

The pioneers were brave, hardy people who went west in search of a better life. They were attracted by the West's open land, good farmland, and rich mineral and forest resources. Through hard work, they settled the Western wilderness—as earlier Americans had done in the East. The pioneersincluded Easterners from both the North and South. Many other pioneers came from Europe. Some people went west in search of religious freedom. The best known of these were the Mormons, who settled in Utah in 1847.

Social Reform.

During the Expansion Era, many Americans came to believe that social reforms were needed to improve their society. Churches and social groups set up charities to aid the poor and teach them how to help themselves. Reformers worked to reduce

the working day of laborers from the usual 12 or 14 hours to 10 hours. Prohibitionists—convinced that drunkenness was the chief cause of poverty and other problems—persuaded 13 states to outlaw the sale of alcohol between 1846 and 1855. Dorothea Dix and others worked to improve the dismal conditions in the nation's prisons and insane asylums. Other important targets of reformers were women's rights, improvements in education, and the abolition of slavery.

1.5. The Civil War and Reconstruction.

The Civil War

It began on April 12, 1861, when Southern troops fired on Fort Sumter, a military post in Charleston Harbor. Both sides quickly prepared for battle after the Fort Sumter clash. The North had superior financial and industrial strength, and a larger population than the South. But the South fought valiantly to defend its cause. The South gained the upper hand at first, but the North gradually turned the tide. Finally, Confederate resistance wore down, and Union armies swept through the South. On April 9, 1865, General Robert E. Lee-the commander of the Confederate Army—surrendered to the Union commander General Ulysses S. Grant at Appomattox Court House in Virginia. The last Confederate troops surrendered on May 26.

The four years of bloody fighting between the North and South had staggering effects on the nation. About 360,000 Union troops and perhaps 260,000 Confederate troops all Americans—died in the conflict. No other war in history has taken so many American lives. Property damage was enormous, especially in the South. Many Southern cities, towns, plantations, factories, and railroads lay in ruin. The war also took an emotional toll on the nation. It caused deep and long-lasting feelings of bitterness and division between the people of the North and the South.

Reconstruction.

Toward the end of the Civil War, the North set out to establish terms under which Confederate States would be readmitted to the Union. The process, through which the South returned, as well as the period following the war, is called Reconstruction.

Northerners divided into two groups over Reconstruction policy. One group, called the moderates, wanted to end the bitterness between the North and South and favored avoiding harsh treatment of the rebels. Members of the other group, the radicals, believed tin; South should be punished. They also wanted a policy that would ensure that blacks received better treatment in the South than they had before the war

Industrialization and Reform.

The industrial growth that began in the United States in the early 1800s continued steadily up to and through the Civil War. Still, by the end of the war, the typical American industry was small. Hand labor remained widespread, limiting the production capacity of industry. Most businesses served a small market and lacked the capital needed for business expansion.

After the Civil War, however, American industry changed dramatically. Machines replaced hand labor as the main means of manufacturing, increasing the production capacity of industry tremendously. A new nationwide network of railroads distributed goods far and wide. Inventors developed new products the public wanted, and businesses made the products in large quantities. Investors and bankers supplied the huge amounts of money that business leaders needed to expand their operations. Many big businesses grew up as a result of these and other developments. They included coal mining, petroleum, and railroad companies; and manufacturers and sellers of such products as steel, industrial machinery, automobiles, and clothing.

The industrial growth had major effects on American life. The new business activity centered in cities. As a result, people moved to cities in record numbers, and the cities grew by leaps and bounds. Many Americans amassed huge fortunes from the business boom, but others lived in extreme poverty. The sharp contrast between the rich and the poor and other features of American life stirred widespread discontent. The discontent triggered new reform movements, which—among other things—led to measures to aid the poor and control the size and power of big

business.

The industrial growth centered chiefly in the North. The war-torn South lagged behind the rest of the country economically. In the West, frontier life was ending. America's role in foreign affairs also changed during the late 1800’s and early 1900’s. The country built up its military strength and became a world power.

Development of New Products.

Inventors created, andbusiness leaders produced and sold, a variety of new products. The products included the typewriter (1867), barbed wire (1874), the telephone (1876), the phonograph (1877), the electric light (1879), and the gasoline automobile (1885). Of these, the automobile had the greatest impact on the nation's economy. In the early |1900’s, Ransom Eli Olds and Henry Ford began turning out cars by mass production. Automobile prices dropped, and sales soared. The number of automobiles owned by Americans jumped from 8,000 in 1900 to almost 3,500,000 in 1916.

Natural Resources.

America's rich and varied natural resources played a key role in the rise of big business. Thenation's abundant water supply helped power the Industrial machines. Forests provided lumber for construction and wooden products. Miners took large quantities of coal and iron ore from the ground. Andrew Carnegie and other business leaders made steel from these minerals. Steel played a vital role in the industrialization process. It was used to build machines, railroad tracks, bridges, automobiles, and skyscrapers. Other industrially valuable minerals included copper, silver, and petroleum. Petroleum—the source of gasoline—became especially important after the automobile came into widespread use in the early 1900s.

1.6. A New Place in the World.

The United States in the War.

After World War I began in 1914, the United States repeatedly stated its position of neutrality. But increasingly, German acts of aggression brought America closer to joining the Allies. On May 7, 1915, a German submarine sank the British passenger

ship Lusitanian. The attack killed 1,198 people, including 128 American passengers. Wilson and other Americans bitterly protested this killing of defenseless civilians, and Germany agreed to stop such attacks.

Wilson won reelection to the presidency in November 1916, using the slogan, "He Kept Us out of War." But three months later, German submarines began sinking Americanmerchant ships. This and other acts of aggression led the United States to declare war on Germany on April 6, 1917.

World War I ended in an Allied victory with the signing of an armistice on Nov. 11, 1918.

Depression and a world in conflict.

The United States suffered through the Great Depression that followed the stock market crash of 1929 for more than 10 years. During the depression, millions of workers lost their jobs and large numbers of farmers were forced to abandon their farms. Poverty swept through the nation on a scale never before experienced.

An abandoned farm in South Dakota during the Great Depression, 1936

The Great Depression was not limited to the United States. It struck almost every other country in the world. In some countries, the hard times helped bring to power dictators who promised to restore the economy. The dictators included Adolph Hitler in Germany and a group of military leaders in Japan. Once in power, both Hitler and the Japanese rulers began conquering neighboring lands. Their actions led to World War II, the most destructive conflict in the history of man. The United States fought in the war from 1941 to 1945, and played a key role in defeating Germany and Japan.

Victory in World War II brought a spirit of great relief and joy to the United

States. The postwar economy boomed. More people shared in the prosperity than ever before, creating a huge, well-to-do middle class. Even so, Americans still faced problems. Chief among them were the new threat of nuclear war, the growing strength of Communism, and discontent among Americans who did not share in the prosperity.

1.7. The United States in World War II.

World War II began on Sept. 1, 1939, when German troops overran Poland. France, Great Britain, and other nations (called the Allies) went to war against Germany. At first, America stayed out of the war. But on Dec. 7, 1941, Japanese planes bombed the U.S. military base at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. The United States declared war on Japan on December 8, and on Germany and Italy—Germany's chief ally—three days later.

The War Effort.

The American people backed the war effort with fierce dedication. About 15 million American men served in the armed forces. They ranged from teen-agers to men well over 40. About 338,000 women served in the armed forces. At home, automobile plants and other factories were converted into defense plants where airplanes, ships, weapons, and other war supplies were made. The country had a shortage of civilian men, and so thousands of women worked in the defense plants. With a combination of humor and admiration, people called the women defense workers "Rosie the Riveter." Even children took part in the war effort Boys and girls collected used tin cans, old tires, and other "junk" that could be recycled and used for war supplies.

Postwar Society.

After World War II, the United States entered the greatest period of economic growth in its history. Periods of inflation (rapidly rising prices) and recession (mild business slumps) occurred. But overall, businesses and people prospered. Prosperity spread to more Americans than ever before, resulting in major changes in American life. However, not all people shared in the prosperity. Millions of Americans—including a high percentage of the nation's blacks—continued to live in poverty. The

existence of poverty amid prosperity broughton a period of active social protest that has continued to the present day.

Poverty and Discrimination.

In spite of the general prosperity, millions of Americans still lived in poverty. The poor included members of all races, but the plight of the nation's poor blacks seemed especially bleak. Ever since emancipation, blacks in both the North and South had faced discrimination in jobs, housing, education, and other areas. A lack of education and jobs made poverty among blacks widespread.

The United States since 1960.

The period of U.S. history since 1960 has been marked by a continuation of many postwar trends. For much of the period, the country's foreign policy remained focused on the containment of Communism. The economy continued to expand, despite recurring periods of inflation and recession. The movement of people from cities to suburbs continued steadily. The 1970 U.S. Census showed that, for the first time, more Americans lived in suburbs than in cities.

The country continued to be a leader in scientific and technological advancements. It made great strides in medicine that helped reduce human suffering, and its technological skill provided the means for a new and exciting field of exploration—outer space.

At the same time, events and new public attitudes brought dramatic social changes to the United States. The black civil rights movement grew in intensity in the 1960s. Many other groups—including American Indians, Mexican Americans, and women—also began demanding fuller rights. In the mid-1960's, many Americans began challenging U.S. foreign-policy decisions. Protesters of all kinds staged demonstrations to try to bring about change. Most demonstrations were conducted peacefully. But in some cases, they led to violence.

Crime and violence soared in the United States after 1960, and pollution threatened the environment. Concern over political corruption grew in the 1970s and helped bring about the first resignation of an American President, Richard M. Nixon.

As in every other period of history, the list of the nation's problems was long. But

at the same time, most Americans maintained a deep pride in their country. In 1976, the American people celebrated the **bicentennial**(200th anniversary) of its founding. In 1987, they observed the bicentennial of the signing of the Constitution of the United States. Both occasions were marked with parades, reenactments of related historical events, and other patriotic celebrations.

🗐**Questions:**

1.How did the history of the USA begin?
2.Who are Paleoamericans?
3.What are the results of the first English settlement of 1607?
4.How did George Washington contribute to the American Revolution and what kind of strategy did he lead?
5.In early years of Republic (19th century), there were Jeffersonian Republican era, era of Good feelings and Reconstruction era. What can you say about each of these periods?
6.What was the aim of progressive activists?
7.Which spheres were affected by "Gold recession " in America in 2008?

***Post-reading tasks*:**

I. Match inventions (1-6) with their invented years (a-f)

1.typewriter
2.barbed wire
3.the telephone
4.the phonograph
5.the electric light
6.the gasoline automobile

a. 1867
b. 1879
c. 1877
d. 1885
e. 1876
f. 1874

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. In 1939, World War II started with some countries going to war against Germany.
2. On December 10, the United States declared war on Japan.
3. There were about 15 million American men who served in the armed forces.
4. “Rosie the Riveter” was how men defense called.
5. After 1960, crime and violence started in the US.
6. The USA fought for 4 years in World War II.

III. Fill the gaps

Natural, leaders, machines, gasoline, coal, business

America's rich and varied _____ resources played a key role in the rise of big _____. Thenation's abundant water supply helped power the Industrial _____. Forests provided lumber for construction and wooden products. Miners took large quantities of _____ and iron ore from the ground. Andrew Carnegie and other business _____ made steel from these minerals. Steel played a vital role in the industrialization process. It was used to build machines, railroad tracks, bridges, automobiles, and skyscrapers. Other industrially valuable minerals included copper, silver, and petroleum. Petroleum—the source of _____—became especially important after the automobile came into widespread use in the early 1900s.

Vocabulary:

Bicentennial – двухсотлетие; двухсотлетний - 200 yuz yillik
Skyscraper –небоскрёб; высотное здание - osmonoʼpar bino -
Vital –крайне важный - muhim
Widespread – широко распространенный - keng-tarqalgan
Violence – сила; ярость- vahshiylik
Crime – преступление -jinoyat
Supply –обеспечивать, поставлять - taʼminlamoq
Abundant – изобилующий- serhosil

Include – включать в себя, содержать в себе- o'zichigaolmoq
Vary –изменять; варьировать - farqlamoq

THEME 3. The Government of the USA.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. The Constitution of The United States

1.2. How the Federal Government is organized

1.3. The Legislative Branch (The Congress)

1.4. The Executive Branch (The President and His Advisors)

1.5. The Judicial Branch (The Federal Court System)

Key words: Residual powers, delegated powers, negotiate, framers of the Constitution, headquarter, direct vote, levy taxes, revenue bill, to grant, to allot, governmental Affairs, veto (reject)

1.1. The Constitution of the United States

The government of the United States is a massive and complex organization. Its purpose is to improve and protect the lives of American citizens, both at home and overseas. Because its functions are so numerous and varied, the government operates on several different levels--national, state, and local. At each of these levels the government makes certain demands on its citizens. But this is only to promote the general welfare of the society as a whole. The American System of Government Allowing for this division of powers in the Constitution was purely an American invention. Section 8 of Article I of the Constitution specifically lists the duties of the national government. These are called delegated powers. The Constitution also gives the states authority in certain matters. These are called residual powers. Duties shared by both the state governments and the national government are called concurrent powers. And The Constitution of the United States of America, the fundamental law of the U.S. federal system of government and a landmark document of the Western world. The oldest written national constitution in use, the Constitution defines the principal organs of government and their jurisdictions and the basic rights of citizens.

Constitutional Convention

The Constitution was written during the summer of 1787 in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, by 55 delegates to a Constitutional Convention that was called ostensibly to amend the Articles of Confederation (1781–89), the country's first written constitution. The Constitution was the product of political compromise after long and often rancorous debates over issues such as states' rights, representation, and slavery. Delegates from small and large states disagreed over whether the number of representatives in the new federal legislature should be the same for each state—as was the case under the Articles of Confederation—or different depending on a state's population. In addition, some delegates from Northern states sought to abolish slavery or, failing that, to make representation dependent on the size of a state's free population. At the same time, some Southern delegates threatened to abandon the convention if their demands to keep slavery and the slave trade legal and to count slaves for representation purposes were not met. Eventually the framers resolved their disputes by adopting a proposal put forward by the Connecticut delegation. The Great Compromise, as it came to be known, created a bicameral legislature with a Senate, in which all states would be equally represented, and a House of Representatives, in which representation would be apportioned on the basis of a state's free population plus three-fifths of its slave population. A further compromise on slavery prohibited Congress from banning the importation of slaves until 1808 After all the disagreements were bridged, the new Constitution was submitted for ratification to the 13 states on September 28, 1787. In 1787–88, in an effort to persuade New York to ratify the Constitution, Alexander Hamilton, John Jay, and James Madison published a series of essays on the Constitution and republican government in New York newspapers. Their work, written under the pseudonym "Publius" and collected and published in book form as The Federalist (1788), became a classic exposition and defense of the Constitution. In June 1788, after the Constitution had been ratified by nine states , Congress set March 4, 1789, as the date for the new government to commence proceedings (the first elections under the Constitution were held late in 1788.

Because ratification in many states was contingent on the promised addition of a Bill of Rights, Congress proposed 12 amendments in September 1789; 10 were ratified by the states, and their adoption was certified on December 15, 1791. One of the original 12 proposed amendments, which prohibited midterm changes in compensation for members of Congress, was ratified in 1992 as the Twenty-seventh Amendment. The last one, concerning the ratio of citizens per member of the House of Representatives, has never been adopted.

National Archives, Washington, D.C.

The authors of the Constitution were heavily influenced by the country's experience under the Articles of Confederation, which had attempted to retain as much independence and sovereignty for the states as possible and to assign to the central government only those nationally important functions that the states could not handle individually. But the events of the years 1781 to 1787, including the national government's inability to act during Shays's Rebellion (1786–87) in Massachusetts, showed that the Articles were unworkable because they deprived the national government of many essential powers, including direct taxation and the ability to regulate interstate commerce. It was hoped that the new Constitution would remedy this problem. The framers of the Constitution were especially concerned with limiting the power of government and securing the liberty of citizens. The doctrine of legislative, executive, and judicial separation of powers, the checks and balances of each branch against the others, and the explicit guarantees of individual liberty were all designed to strike a balance between authority and liberty—the central purpose of American constitutional law.

1.2. How the Federal Government is organized

During the summer of 1787, 55 delegates gathered in Philadelphia to draft a new constitution for the United States. The country had recently won its independence from England. The founders wanted to create a national government that would be strong enough to defend the country and be able to negotiate trade agreements with

foreign nations. But at the same time, they did not want to make the government so powerful that it could take control away from the people. Therefore, to limit the government's authority, the founders came up with the concept of separation of powers. This system limits the power of government by dividing authority among three separate, but equally powerful, branches. The legislative branch writes the laws; the executive branch carries out the laws; and the judicial branch reviews the way laws are applied. This separation is achieved symbolically in the Constitution itself. (Each branch is described in a separate article.) Symbolism is also evident in the physical headquarters of each branch in Washington, D.C.--the legislative in the Capitol; the executive in the White House; and the judicial in the Supreme Court Building. The Constitution also states that no individual may hold office in more than one branch at a time. The one exception is the vice president, who serves in both the executive and the legislative branches.

1.3. The Legislative Branch (The Congress)

The framers of the Constitution gave more space to the legislature (lawmaking) branch of the government than to the other two branches combined. Article I of the Constitution specifies that there shall be two separate legislative bodies--a House of Representatives and a Senate. Together they are called the Congress. Powers granted Congress under the Constitution include the power to levy taxes, borrow money, regulate interstate commerce, declare war, seat members, discipline its own membership, and determine its rules of procedure.

The House of Representatives is chosen by the direct vote for the electorate in single-member district in each state, the number of representatives allotted to each state being based on population and the overall total never exceeding 435. Members must be 25 years old, residents of the state from which they are elected, and previously citizens of the United States for at least 7-years. It has become practically imperative, thou not constitutionally required that they be inhabitants if the district that elect them. They serve for a two –year period. The members of the House of Representatives choose their own leader, called the Speaker of the House. The Speaker belongs to the majority party. This is the political party to which more

than half--the majority--of representatives belong. The Speaker plays an active role in setting the legislative agenda. The agenda determines which bills will be voted on and in what order. The Speaker is assisted by the House majority leader.

The Senate is the smaller of the two houses of Congress. Each state has two senators, regardless of the size of its population. The first Senate had 26 members representing the 13 states. Today there are 100 senators representing 50 states. Each senator is elected to a 6-year term. Every two years, one third of the total members (33 or 34) come up for election. Senators must be at least 30 years old, residents of the state from which they are elected, and previously citizens of the United States for at least 9-years. The Senate has 16 standing committees, among which the most prominent are those on Foreign Relations, Finance, Appropriations and Governmental Affairs.

The main powers of Congress are to raise money for use by the government and to decide in broad terms how to spend it. Congress does its work by considering bills (or proposed laws) that have been introduced by its members. There are three major categories of bills considered by Congress. Most bills are authorization bills. They create and set goals for government programs. Appropriations bills are requests for money to fund these programs. And revenue bills are designed to raise money through taxation, and other means. The president also has a hand in the lawmaking process. Each year the executive branch presents a budget to the Congress. It outlines the funds the president and the executive departments would like to spend. Congress considers the president's plan but usually changes it in many ways.

1.4. The Executive Branch (The President and His Advisors)

The executive branch of the government is described in Article II of the Constitution. Much of it explains a presidential election procedure that was later changed by the Twelfth Amendment. Today presidential candidates are elected to 4-year terms through a complicated system known as the Electoral College. To win an election, a candidate must receive a majority of electoral votes cast by the states.

If no candidate wins such a majority, the House of Representatives decide who will become president. The Senate decides who will become vice president.

The President's Main Roles

The president is the chief executive, or chief administrator, of the United States. His job is to manage all of the people who work in the executive branch and to make sure the laws of the nation are enforced. He also holds the title chief of state. This means he is the foremost representative of the nation. As such, he performs ceremonial duties and meets with the leaders of foreign nations. In addition to his executive responsibilities, the president has certain legislative and judicial powers. More than any other person, he is responsible for legislation. He may suggest legislation to Congress that he feels will improve the "state of the union." He might work closely with congressional leaders to see that his ideas are carefully considered. The president may also veto (reject) legislation that he feels should not become law.

The president also holds certain judicial powers. He recommends candidates for the position of attorney general, who heads up the executive Department of Justice. He nominates Supreme Court justices (judges), federal court justices, and U.S. district attorneys whenever there are vacancies. And, except in cases involving impeachment of a government official, he has the power to pardon criminals. In addition to these duties, the president is also the commander in chief of the United States Armed Forces. The fact that the U.S. armed forces are led by the president, who is a civilian and not a military officer, is an important aspect of the American government. It guarantees democratic control over this enormously powerful organization within the government.

As head of the diplomatic corps, the president can make treaties with foreign countries. He can also appoint U.S. ambassadors and receive visits from foreign ambassadors and heads of state. Although his job is an enormous one, the president is assisted by a large number of close associates. He appoints key advisers to head up the various executive departments, bureaus, offices, and agencies. All together, approximately 3 million civilians and 2 million military personnel work in the

executive branch. They are called the president's administration. Every year the offices in which they work issue rules and guidelines. Together they fill up more than 50,000 pages in a series of books called The Federal Register. For more information, refer to the articles Presidency of the United States and Vice Presidency of the United States.

1.5. The Judicial Branch (The Federal Court System)

Article III of the Constitution describes the responsibilities of the judicial branch of the United States government. But Article III says little more than that the nation's judicial power should be in the hands of a Supreme Court and any such lower courts the Congress may decide to create. The judicial branch of the federal government is headed by the U.S. Supreme Court, which interprets the meaning of the Constitution and of federal laws.

The Supreme Court

The highest court in the nation is the United States Supreme Court. It is made up of one chief justice and eight associate justices (judges). They are appointed by presidents with the approval of the Senate. Supreme Court justices may serve for life or until they wish to retire. The Supreme Court has many important powers.

One is the ability to declare laws unconstitutional, or invalid. This is known as the power of judicial review. It allows the Supreme Court to check the power of the other two branches of the federal government as well as that of the state's governments.

The Lower Federal Courts

If the government or a citizen has a case that involves a federal law, the case goes to a federal district court. (This is called a court of original jurisdiction because it is the first to try such cases.) There are 89 district courts in the 50 states, plus one each for the District of Columbia and Puerto Rico. Territorial Courts have also been established for Guam, the Virgin Islands, and the Northern Mariana Islands. In addition to the district courts, Congress has established four special courts of original jurisdiction. They are the U.S. Tax Court, the U.S. Court of International Trade, the U.S. Court of Military Appeals, and the U.S. Claims Court. All of these courts sit in Washington, D.C. Those who lose a case in a district court or in one of the specialized courts may take their case to a higher court to appeal the court's decision. The same is true for those who feel they have not been treated fairly. Such cases are brought before a United States Court of Appeals, also known as a circuit court. These courts have appellate jurisdiction. This means they have the authority to hear cases that have already been decided by a lower court. There are 13 U.S. courts of appeals around the country. The Supreme Court has original jurisdiction in very few cases, and these are specified in the Constitution. For the most part the Supreme Court hears cases that come on appeal from one of the circuit courts or from the high court’s of the fifty states. Citizens do not have the right to have their appeals heard by the Supreme Court.

🗐Questions:

1. What are the three branches of the national government?
2. How the Federal Government was organized?
3. What is the Congress?
4. What are its powers?
5. How is the House of Representatives chosen? What about the Senate?
6. What are the imperative requirements to the president?

7. What are the president's main duties?
8. What is the main duty of the Supreme Court?
9. What is the structure of the Supreme Court?
10. What is the role of the Lower Federal Courts?

Post reading tasks:

I. Matching

1. Impeach	a. an organization of people with some common interst who try to influence government decisions
2. House of Representatives	b. in both the House and Senate, the political party to which more than half the members belong
3. Casework	c. a resolution that is passed by both houses of Congress
4. Senate	d. the work that a lawmaker does to help constituents with a problem
5. Joint resolution	e. the upper house of Congress, consisting of two representatives from each state
6. Majority party	f. president's power to kill a bill, if Congress is not in session, by not signing it for 10 days
7. Pocket veto	g. to accuse government officials of misconduct in office
8. Voice vote	h. the lower House of Congress, consisting of a different number of representatives from each state, depending on population
9. Enumerated power	i. a voting method in which those in favor say "aye" and those against say "no"
10. Special-interest group	j. power that the U.S. Congress has that is specifically listed in the

Constitution, another name for expressed power

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. Congress is made of 100 judges and 435 representatives
2. The most important duty of the legislative branch is to make laws
3. It is the responsibility of the judges to collect and spend money from taxes
4. The U.S Government is split into 3-branches: Legislative, Executive and Judicial
5. The President signs bills into laws
6. The Supreme Court gives advice to the President about important matters…
7. Decisions made by the Supreme Court are final, and cannot be overruled…
8. The Executive branch decides if laws agree with the Constitution…
9. The Vice-President is the commander in chief at the U.S. armed forces…
10. The President appoints Supreme Court judges

III: Fill the gaps

Supreme Court, vertical, denote, formulate, scheme, invoke, proclaim, US Congress, usage, Federal government

1. In the USA, citizens can _____ the right to silence if they do not want to answer a question in court.
2. The Prime Minister set up a committee of financial experts to help him discuss and_____ _____ new policies.
3. The New Constitution of the United States of America was_____ in 1787.
4. In the United States, the _____ _____ has overall responsibility for foreign affairs and defenses.
5. In newspapers, the layout of the columns is _____, while the rows run across the page horizontally.
6. The _____ _____ is made up of the House of Representatives and theSenate.
7. The _____ of drugs has increased significantly in spite of more severe penalties such as longer prison sentences.
8. The _____ in the United States is the highest and most important court in the country.

9. We use the term "class" to _____ groups of people who share the same social and economic backgrounds.

10. The government has launched a new _____ aimed at reducing youth unemployment.

Vocabulary:

Delegatedpowers - полномочия, предоставленные правительству Конституцией США – AQSHKonstitutsiyasitomonidanberilganhuquqlar
Residualpowers – остаточные правомочия, сохранившиеся за штатами после объединения их в федерацию – Mahalliyhuquqlar
Negotiate – вести переговоры, договариваться – bitimtuzmoq
Framers of the Constitution – «Отцы», творцыконституцииСША – AQSH Konstitutsiyasi tuzuvchilari
Direct vote – прямоеголосование – to'g'ridan-to'g'ri ovoz
Levytaxes – взимать налоги, облагать налогами – soliqundirmoq
Revenuebill – налоговый законопроект –soliqqonunchiligi
Togrant –предоставлять, разрешать – ruhsatbermoq
Toallot – выделять, распределять – ajratmoq, ajratibbermoq
Governmental Affairs – государственныедела – davlatga doir ishlar, aloqalar
Veto (reject) – запрещать – ta'qiqlamoq

THEME 4. American Education System.

Thequestions to be discussed:

1.1. The general pattern of education

1.2. Basic curricular structure

1.3. Post-secondary education

Key words: Education system, curriculum, primary school, secondary school, high school, undergraduate, post-graduate

1.1.The general pattern of education

The general pattern of education in the USA is an eight-year elementary school, followed by a four-year high school. This has been called 8—4 plan organization. It is preceded, in many localities, by nursery schools and kindergartens. It is followed by a four-year college and professional schools. This traditional pattern, however, has been varied in many different ways. The 6—3— 3 plan consists of a six-year elementary school, a three-year junior high school, and a three-year senior

high school. Another variation is a 6—6 plan organization, with a six-year elementary school followed by a six-year secondary school.

American education provides a program for children, beginning at the age of 6 and continuing up to the age of 16 in some of the states, and to 18 in others.

The elementary school in the United States is generally considered to include the first six or eight grades of the common-school system, depending upon the organization that has been accepted for the secondary school. It has been called the "grade school" or the "grammar school". There is no single governmental agency to prescribe for the American school system; different types of organization and of curriculum are tried out.

The length of the school year varies among the states. Wide variation exists also in the length of the school day. A common practice is to have school in session from 9:00 to 12:00 in the morning and from 1:00 to 3:30 in the afternoon, Monday through Friday. The school day for the lower grades is often from 30 minutes to an hour shorter. Most schools require some homework to be done by elementary pupils.

Preschool.

There are no mandatory public preschool or programs in the United States. The federal government funds the Head Start preschool program for poor children, but most families are on their own with regard to finding a preschool or child care.

Primary and Secondary Education.

Schooling is compulsory for all children in the United States, but the age range for which school attendance is required varies from state to state. Most children begin primary education with kindergarten at the age of 5 or 6, depending upon eligibility requirements in their district, and complete their secondary education at the age of 18 when their senior year of high school ends. Typically, mandatory education starts with first grade (kindergarten is rarely compulsory). Some states allow students to leave school at age 16, before finishing high school; other states require students to stay in school until age 18. Most parents send their children to either a public or private institution. According to government data, one-tenth of

students are enrolled in private schools. Approximately 85% of students enter the public schools, largely because they are "free" (tax burdens by school districts vary from area to area). Students attend school for around eight hours per day, and anywhere from 175 to 185 days per year. Most schools have a summer break period for about two and half months from June through August. This break is much longer than the one student in many other nations received. Originally, "summer vacation", as it is colloquially called, allowed students to participate in the harvest period during the summer. However, this is now relatively unnecessary and remains largely by tradition; it also has immense popular support. Parents may also choose to educate their own children at home; 1.7% of children are educated in this manner. Proponents of home education invoke parental responsibility and the classical liberal arguments for personal freedom from government intrusion. Few proponents advocate that home schooling should be the dominant educational policy. Most home schooling advocates are wary of the established educational institutions for various reasons. Some are religious conservatives who see nonreligious education as contrary to their moral or religious systems. Others feel that they can more effectively tailor a curriculum to suit an individual student's academic strengths and weaknesses, especially those with learning disabilities. Still others feel that the negative social pressures of schools (such as bullying, drugs, crime, and other school-related problems) are detrimental to a child's proper development. Parents often form groups to help each other in the home schooling process, and may even assign classes to different parents, similar to public and private schools. Opposition to home schooling comes from varied sources, including teachers' organizations and school districts. The National Education Association, the largest labor union in the United States, has been particularly vocal in the past. Opponents' stated concerns fall into several broad categories, including fears of poor academic quality, loss of income for the schools, and religious or social extremism, or lack of socialization with others.

Elementary school (Kindergarten through Grade 5/6)

Elementary school, "grade school", "grammar school", and "public school" are all interchangeable names for schools that begin with kindergarten or first grade and end either with fifth or sixth grade. Elementary school provides a common daily routine for all students except the most disadvantaged (those with learning disabilities, mental illnesses, or those students who do not speak English). Sometimes gifted or advanced students receive separate education as well. Students do not choose a course structure and remain in a single classroom throughout the school day, with the exceptions of physical education ("P.E." or "gym"), music, and/or art classes. Education is relatively unstandardized at this level. Teachers, most of whom are women, receive a book to give to the students for each subject and brief overviews of what they are expected to teach. In general, a student learns basic arithmetic and sometimes rudimentary algebra in mathematics, English proficiency (such as basic grammar, spelling, and vocabulary), and fundamentals of other subjects. Social studies and sciences are often underdeveloped, largely because most elementary teachers have a degree in English or education. Social studies may include basic events and concepts in American and world history and, in some places, state or local history; science varies widely.

Middle School (Grades 6/7 through 8)

It is common in the United States for old High School campuses to be turned into middle schools, as is the case with Leonia Middle School "Middle school", "junior high school", and "intermediate school" are all interchangeable names for schools that begin in 6th or 7th grade and end in 8th, though they sometimes include 9th grade as well. The term "junior high school" and the arrangement beginning with 7th grade are becoming less common. At this time students begin to enroll in class schedules where they take classes from several teachers in a given day, unlike in elementary school where most classes are taught by the same teacher. The classes are usually a strict set of science, math, English, and social science

courses, interspersed with a reading and/or technology class. Every year from kindergarten through ninth grade usually includes a mandatory physical education (P.E.) class. Student-chosen courses, known as electives, are generally limited to only one or two classes.

High school (Grades 9 through 12)

High school runs from grades 9 through 12. Some school districts deviate from this formula. The most widely seen difference is to include 9th grade in middle school, though it is a relatively old practice which is disappearing. Also, many districts will use an older high school as a separate campus for 9th grade, allowing these students to adjust to a high school environment. In high school, students obtain much more control of their education and often may even choose their core classes.

1.2. Basic curricular structure.

Most students in the United States, unlike their counterparts in other developed nations, do not begin to specialize into a narrow field of study until their sophomore year of college. Some schools do encourage students to take electives in the areas they are considering for a career. Generally, at the high school level, they take a broad variety of classes without special emphasis. The curriculum varies widely in quality and rigidity; for example, some states consider 70 (on a 100-point scale) to be a passing grade, while others consider it to be as low as 60 or as high as 75. The following are the typical minimum course sequences that one must take in order to obtain a high school diploma; they are not indicative of the necessary minimum courses or course rigor required for attending college in the United States:

Science

- Biology, chemistry, and physics;
- Mathematics (usually three years minimum, including algebra, geometry, algebra II, and/or precalculus/trigonometry);
- English (four years);

- Social Science (various history, government, and economics courses, always including American history);
- Physical education (at least one year).

Many states require a "Health" course in which students learn anatomy, nutrition, and first aid; the basic concepts of sexuality and birth control; and why to avoid substances like illegal drugs, cigarettes, and alcohol.

Electives

High schools offer a wide variety of elective courses, although the availability of such courses depends upon each particular school's financial situation.

Common types of electives include:

- Visual arts (drawing, sculpture, painting, photography, film);
- Performing Arts (drama, band, orchestra, dance);
- Shop (woodworking, metalworking, automobile repair);
- Computers (word processing, programming, graphic design);
- Athletics (football, baseball, basketball, track and field, swimming, gymnastics, water polo, soccer);
- Publishing (journalism, yearbook);
- Foreign languages (French, German, and Spanish are common; Chinese, Latin, Greek and Japanese are less common).

Not all schools require the same rigor of course work. Most high and middle schools offer "honors" or "gifted" classes for motivated and gifted students, where the quality of education is usually higher and more demanding. There are also specialized magnet schools with competitive entrance requirements.

If funds are available, a high school may provide Advanced Placement or International Baccalaureate courses, which are special forms of honors classes. AP or IB courses are usually taken during the third or fourth years of high school, either as a replacement for a typical third-year course (e.g., taking AP U.S. History as a replacement for standard U.S. History), a refresher of an earlier course (e.g., taking AP Biology in the fourth year even though one already took Biology as a

freshman), or simply as a way to study something interesting during one's senior year (e.g., AP Economics).

Most postsecondary institutions take AP or IB exam results into consideration in the admissions process. Because AP and IB courses are supposed to be the equivalent of freshman year college courses, postsecondary institutions may grant unit credit which enables students to graduate early. Other institutions use examinations for placement purposes only: students are exempted from introductory course work but may not receive credit towards a concentration, degree, or core requirement. Institutions vary in the selection of examinations they accept and the scores they require to grant credit or placement, with more elite institutions tending to accept fewer examinations and requiring higher scoring. Both public schools and private schools in wealthy neighborhoods are able to provide many more AP and IB course options than impoverished inner-city high schools, and this difference is seen as a major cause of the differing outcomes for their graduates.

Also, in states with well-developed community college systems, there are often mechanisms by which gifted students may seek permission from their school district to attend community college courses full time during the summer, and during weekends and evenings during the school year. The units earned this way can often be transferred to one's university, and can facilitate early graduation. Early college entrance programs are a step further, with students enrolling as freshmen at a younger-than-traditional age.

Extracurricular Activities.

High school football games in the United States are major events for the school and often the community.

Many students, mostly in middle and high schools, participate in extracurricular activities. These activities can extend to large amounts of time outside the normal school day; home schooled students, however, are not normally allowed to participate. Student participation in sports programs, drill teams, bands, and spirit groups can amount to hours of practices and performances. Most states have

organizations which develop rules for competition between groups. These organizations are usually forced to implement time limits on hours practiced as a prerequisite for participation.

Sports programs and their related games, especially football and/or basketball, are major events for American students and for larger schools can be a major source of funds for school districts. Schools may sell "spirit" shirts to wear to games; school stadiums and gymnasiums are often filled to capacity, even for non sporting competitions.

1.3. Post-secondary Education

Post-secondary education in the United States is known as college or university and commonly consists of four years of study at an institution of higher learning. Like high school, the four undergraduate grades are commonly called freshman, sophomore, junior, and senior years (alternately called first year, second year, etc.). Students traditionally apply to receive admission into college, with varying difficulties of entrance. Schools differ in their competitiveness and reputation; generally, public schools are viewed as more lenient and less prestigious than the more expensive private schools. Admissions criteria involve test scores (the SAT and ACT) and class ranking as well as extracurricular activities performed prior to the application date. Also, many colleges consider the rigor of previous courses taken along with the grades earned. Certain test scores, class rank, or other numerical factors hardly ever have absolute, required levels, but often have a threshold below which admission is unlikely.

Once admitted, students engage in undergraduate study, which consists of satisfying university and class requirements to achieve a bachelor's degree. The

most common method consists of four years of study leading to a Bachelor of Arts (BA), a Bachelor of Science (BS), or sometimes (but very rarely) another bachelor's degree such as Bachelor of Fine Arts (BFA). Some students choose to attend a community college for two years prior to further study at another college or university. In most states, community colleges are operated either by a division of the state university or by local special districts subject to guidance from a state agency. Though rarely handing out actual degrees, community colleges may award an Associate of Arts (AA) degree after two years. Those seeking to continue their education may transfer to a four-year college or university (after applying through a similar admissions process as those applying directly to the four-year institution,). Some community colleges have automatic enrollment agreements with a local four-year college, where the community college provides the first two years of study and the university provides the remaining years of study, sometimes all on one campus. The community college awards the associate's degree and the university awards the bachelor's and master's degrees. Homer statue at the University of Virginia Graduate study, conducted after obtaining an initial degree and sometimes after several years of professional work, leads to a more advanced degree such as a master's degree, which could be a Master of Arts (MA), Master of Science (MS), or other less common master's degrees such as Master of Business Administration (MBA), Master of Education (MEd), and Master of Fine Arts (MFA). After additional years of study and sometimes in conjunction with the completion of a master's degree, students may earn a Doctor of Philosophy (Ph.D.) or other doctoral degree, such as Doctor of Arts, Doctor of Education or Doctor of Theology. Some programs, such as medicine, have formal apprenticeship procedures like residency and interning which must be completed after graduation and before one is considered to be fully trained. Other professional programs like law and business have no formal apprenticeship requirements after graduation (although law school graduates must take the bar exam in order to legally practice law).Entrance into graduate programs usually depends upon a student's undergraduate academic performance or professional experience as well as their

score on a standardized entrance exam like the GRE (graduate schools in general), the LSAT (law), the GMAT (business), or the MCAT (medicine). Many graduate and law schools do not require experience after earning a bachelor's degree to enter their programs; however, business school candidates may be considered deficient without several years of professional work experience. Only 8.9 percent of students ever receive postgraduate degrees, and most, after obtaining their bachelor's degree, proceed directly into the workforce.

🗐**Questions:**

1. How does a general pattern of American Education look?
2. What school is not compulsory for American children?
3. Tell the origin of "Summer vacation"
4. How much per cent of children are educated at home?
5. Tell about high schools.
6. What does science include?
7. What are elective courses?
8. What are the differences between American and British Education system?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match types of schools (1-5) with grades (a-e)

1. Preschool	a. 6/7 through 8
2. Primary school	b. 9 through 12
3. Elementary school	c. 5 and 6 grades
4. Middle school	d. 5/6 years old
5. High school	e. 2/3 years old

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. Pre-schools are mandatory in the US.
2. School summer breaks usually last more than 2 months.
3. Elementary school can also be called 'grammar school'.
4. Student-chosen subjects are called science subjects.
5. Electives include Visual arts, performing Arts and so on.

III. Fill the gaps

Freshman, higher, varying, consists, entrance, lenient, private

Post-secondary education in the United States is known as college or university and commonly _____ of four years of study at an institution of _____ learning. Like high school, the four undergraduate grades are commonly called _____, sophomore, junior, and senior years (alternately called first year, second year, etc.). Students traditionally apply to receive admission into college, with _____ difficulties of _____. Schools differ in their competitiveness and reputation; generally, public schools are viewed as more _____ and less prestigious than the more expensive _____ schools.

Vocabulary:

Elementary school –начальнаяшкола – boshlang'ich maktab
Mandatory – обязательно – majburiy
Require – требовать – talab etmoq
Enroll – записаться – ro'yxatdan etmoq
Advocate – защищать - himoyalamoq
Deviate – отклоняться - adashmoq
Necessary – необходимо - zarur
Depend on –зависитот – bog'liq bo'lmoq
Demanding – требующий – talab etiladigan
Graduation – выпускной - bitiruv

THEME 5. Customs and traditions of the USA.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1.Language
1.2.Religion
1.3.American style
1.4.American food
1.5.The arts
1.6.American holidays
1.7.Symbols of the United States

Key words: urban,melting pot, influence, nonpartisan, religious freedom, occupation, quilt, commemorate,trick-or-treaters, unwrap, arrow, war-related, torch, copper, independence ,motto, evoke, stern

1.1.General information

American culture encompasses the customs and traditions of the United States. "Culture encompasses religion, food, what we wear, how we wear it, our language, marriage, music, what we believe is right or wrong, how we sit at the table, how we greet visitors, how we behave with loved ones, and a million other things," said Cristina De Rossi, an anthropologist at Barnet and Southgate College in London.

The United States is the third largest country in the world with a population of more than 325 million, according to the U.S. Census Bureau. A child is born every 8 seconds, and a person dies every 12 seconds.

In addition to Native Americans who were already living on the continent, the population of the United States was built on immigration from other countries. Despite recent moves to close the U.S. borders to new immigrants and refugees, a new immigrant moves to the United States every 33 seconds, according to the Census Bureau.

Because of this, the United States is one of the most culturally diverse countries in the world. Nearly every region of the world has influenced American culture, most notably the English who colonized the country beginning in the early 1600s. U.S. culture has also been shaped by the cultures of Native Americans, Latin Americans, Africans and Asians.

The United States is sometimes described as a "melting pot" in which different cultures have contributed their own distinct "flavors" to American culture. Just as cultures from around the world have influenced American culture, today American culture influences the world. The term Western culture often refers broadly to the cultures of the United States and Europe.

The way people "melt" in the United States differs. "Different groups of immigrants integrate in different ways," De Rossi told Live Science. "For example, in the United States, Catholic Spanish-speaking communities might keep their

language and other cultural family traditions, but are integrated in the urban community and have embraced the American way of life in many other ways."

1.2. Language

There is no official language of the United States, according to the U.S. government. While almost every language in the world is spoken in the United States, the most frequently spoken non-English languages are Spanish, Chinese, French and German. Ninety percent of the U.S. population speaks and understands at least some English, and most official business is conducted in English. Some states have official or preferred languages. For example, English and Hawaiian are the official languages in Hawaii.

The Census Bureau estimates that more than 300 languages are spoken in the United States. The bureau divides those languages into four categories: Spanish; other Indo-European languages, which includes German, Yiddish, Swedish, French, Italian, Russian, Polish, Hindi, Punjabi, Greek and several others; Asian and Pacific Island languages, including Chinese, Korean, Japanese, Thai, Tamil and more; and "all other languages," which is a category for languages that didn't fit into the first three categories, such as Hungarian, Arabic, Hebrew, languages of Africa and languages of native people of North, Central and South America.

1.3. Religion

Nearly every known religion is practiced in the United States, which was founded on the basis of religious freedom. About 71 percent of Americans identify themselves as Christians, according to information gathered by the Pew Research Center, a nonpartisan research group, in 2017. The research also found that about 23 percent had no religious affiliation at all and around 6 percent of the population is made up non-Christian religions.

The number of people who identify with no religion seems to be decreasing. According to the Pew Research Center, this category is expected to drop from 16 percent in 2015 to 13 percent in 2060.

1.4.American style

Clothing styles vary by social status, region, occupation and climate. Jeans, sneakers, baseball caps, cowboy hats and boots are some items of clothing that are closely associated with Americans. Ralph Lauren, Calvin Klein, Michael Kors and Victoria Secret are some well-known American brands.

American fashion is widely influenced by celebrities and the media, and fashion sales equal around $200 billion per year, according to a paper published by Harvard University in 2007. More and more Americans are buying fashion, electronics and more online. According to the Census Bureau, U.S. retail e-commerce sales for the first quarter of 2017 totaled around $98.1 billion.

1.5.American food

American cuisine was influenced by Europeans and Native Americans in its early history. Today, there are a number of foods that are commonly identified as American, such as hamburgers, hot dogs, potato chips, macaroni and cheese, and meat loaf. "As American as apple pie" has come to mean something that is authentically American.

There are also styles of cooking and types of foods that are specific to a region. Southern-style cooking is often called "American comfort food" and includes dishes such as fried chicken, collard greens, black-eyed peas and corn bread. Tex-Mex, popular in Texas and the Southwest, is a blend of Spanish and Mexican cooking styles and includes items such as chili and burritos, and relies heavily on shredded cheese and beans.

1.6.The arts

The United States is widely known around the world as a leader in mass media production, including television and movies. According to the U.S. Department of Commerce, the United States comprises one-third of the worldwide media and entertainment industry.

The television broadcasting industry took hold in the United States in the early 1950s, and American television programs are now shown around the world. The

United States also has a vibrant movie industry, centered in Hollywood, California, and American movies are popular worldwide. The U.S. film industry earned $31 billion in revenues in 2013, and is expected to reach $771 billion by 2019, according to the U.S. Department of Commerce.

The United States' arts culture extends beyond movies and television shows, though. New York is home to Broadway, and Americans have a rich theatrical history. American folk art is an artistic style and is identified with quilts and other hand-crafted items. American music is very diverse with many, many styles, including rhythm and blues, jazz, gospel, country and western, bluegrass, rock 'n' roll and hip hop.

1.7.Amerian holidays

Many holidays are celebrated only in the United States.

Independence Day (otherwise known as "4th of July")

Independence Day is the national holiday of the United States, and possibly one of the most important holidays of the year. The celebration commemorates the fact that back in 1776, the members of the Second Continental Congress declared their independence from the British Crown. Nowadays, this day is a celebration of all-things-American, from hot dogs and country music to exercising the freedom to choose and express yourself.

Americans often celebrate this day with their families and friends, enjoying the multiple Independence Day parades and outdoor celebrations, since it occurs during the summer time. If the weather permits, people set up picnics and barbecues in parks and their backyards and watch fireworks in the evening. American flags and red, white, and blue decorations such as banners and streamers appear everywhere, and most shops offer traditional American and flag-colored goods.

Halloween (31 October)

Although Halloween is not a federal holiday, it is very popular throughout the entire country. It was brought to the US by Irish immigrants, who used to celebratethe evening before the Catholic festival of All Saints' Day. It was all

about remembering the souls that had not made it up to heaven and keeping the transience of earthly existence in mind. It was probably this *memento mori* aspect that introduced the widespread use of skulls as the representative symbol, which was ultimately extended to include other symbols of death and decay.

Today, the main focus is on dressing up in scary or creative costumes and attending parties. Carved pumpkins, so-called jack-o-lanterns, are everywhere on Halloween, adorning doorsteps and window sills, front lawns, and porches which are also decorated with gravestones, spiders, zombies, and skeletons. The preparations for the celebration are taken very seriously, with people dedicating a lot of time and effort to come up with costumes ideas. The same goes for elaborate decorations in and outside the house.

A decorated porch indicates to the trick-or-treaters that they are welcomed to ring your doorbell and demand candy. Trick-or-treaters are kids dressed up in costumes, usually accompanied by their parents, that go from door to door and ask for treats by saying "trick-or-treat". It is common to prepare a bowl of candy and hand them out throughout the evening or leave it at the porch for the kids to pick up a handful themselves.

During the time before Halloween, you will notice that many shops decorate their interiors as well and offer many Halloween-themed goods. And while the holiday, which commemorates the eve of the All Hallows' Day, is very big in the US, All Hallows' Day itself is not celebrated in the country.

Thanksgiving (fourth Thursday in November)

Thanksgiving is a celebration that originates from a tradition to give thanks for a good harvest. It is said to have its origins in 1621 when the first colonists in New England and Native Americans came together to enjoy a large feast at the end of the first harvest. Although historians doubt the accuracy of this story, it is the official version most Americans accept as fact.

Nowadays, Thanksgiving is usually celebrated with the extended family and, occasionally, also with very close friends. Even family members who

live far away from their relatives come home for this holiday to spend time with their loved ones. In some cases, since Thanksgiving and Christmas are so close to each other, many family members choose to go home for Christmas only, and organize a Thanksgiving celebration in their city of residence among friends, calling it “Friendsgiving”.

A traditional Thanksgiving dinner includes a roast turkey, cranberry sauce, sweet potatoes, and other foods of the season that are served for a huge dinner. At the start of the dinner, people take time to share with everyone what they are grateful for that year. When the turkey is carved, people take out the wishbone and break it to see whose wish will be granted. They do it by pulling on each side of the bone: whoever gets the bigger part wins.

The day leading up to the dinner is often spent cooking and watching the Macy’s Thanksgiving Day Parade or a football game on TV. Another televised story is the turkey pardon: The President of the United States grants life to a live turkey that has been gifted to them, allowing it to continue living on the farm until the end of its days.

Christmas Eve/Day (24/25 December)

Although this Christian festival is celebrated in many countries around the globe, Americans came up with a number of original holiday traditions. In recent years, Christmas decorations now go up almost immediately after Thanksgiving. Houses are decorated with mistletoes, fairy lights, a Christmas tree, and other seasonal indoor and outdoor decorations. Many people use this time to shop for gifts and take it as an opportunity to do charitable work.

The more religious people often attend the Midnight Mass held on Christmas Eve. While there’s still a tradition to hang stockings (often with your name on it) for Saint Nicolas to fill it up with presents, most children expect Santa Claus to slide down the chimney at night and leave presents under the Christmas tree. In anticipation, kids often leave milk and cookies out for Santa as well as carrots for his reindeers.

On Christmas morning everyone unwraps their gifts. People spend the day with their family and friends watching holiday classics (movies like *It's a Wonderful Life* or *A Charlie Brown Christmas*) or basketball on TV or taking a stroll around the neighborhood admiring the Christmas lights. The main celebration takes place with a big dinner. The star dish of the dinner depends on the state, but, in most cases, it's roast turkey or ham.

As the US is home to a highly diverse populace, Christmas is only one of a number of festivals taking place towards the end of the year. Hanukkah and Kwanzaa are celebrated around this time of the year as well, therefore this period is usually referred to as "the holiday season".

1.8. Symbols of the United States

Every nation has symbols—specific objects that represent beliefs, values, traditions, or other intangible ideas that make that country unique. While these symbols may change over time, they can help to bind a nation together by reminding its people of their nation's history and most important principles. Here is a list of the national symbols of one of the world's oldest democracies, the United States of America:

The bald eagle has long been the national bird of the United States. In 1782, the Continental Congress adopted the Great Seal of the United States, which depicts a bald eagle holding 13 olive branches in one talon and 13 arrows in the other. The olive branch stands for the power to make peace, while the arrows stand for the power to make war.

The national anthem, "The Star-Spangled Banner," has a colorful history. Francis Scott Key wrote the lyrics to the anthem as a poem in 1814, after he witnessed the British Navy bombarding ships during the Battle of Fort McHenry in the War of 1812. The melody was "borrowed" from the tune of a popular British song. The song became the official national anthem in 1931, replacing several other songs commonly sung at public events. The anthem is somewhat controversial because of its war-related imagery and the challenge that the music poses to singers.

Uncle Sam, whose image appeared during the War of 1812, is a symbol of the U.S. government. He is portrayed as an older, bearded man dressed in clothes that evoke the U.S. flag. Uncle Sam is commonly used in political cartoons, as well as in advertising. Perhaps the best-known image of Uncle Sam was as a recruiting tool for the U.S. Army during World War I. A poster by artist James Montgomery Flagg, shows a stern Uncle Sam pointing at the viewer over the caption: “I Want YOU for the U.S. Army.”

The Statue of Liberty (its formal title is Liberty Enlightening the World) was a gift to the United States from the people of France. Dedicated in 1886, the statue shows Libertas, the Roman goddess of freedom. Located in New York Harbor, the statue holds a torch in one hand and a tablet representing the law in the other. The date of the Declaration of Independence is inscribed on the tablet. A broken chain sits at Libertas’s feet. The statue is an iconic symbol of freedom. Protestors around the world have used the image of the statue in their struggles for political freedom; a replica was erected in 1989 in Beijing’s Tiananmen Square.

The national flag of the United States of America has fifty stars (representing 50 states) on the background of blue and 13 stripes (representing 13 colonies that rebelled against British rule and became the first states of the Union) in red and white. The flag was originally ordered to be made during the preparations for the Battle of Baltimore. It was 42 feet in length and 30 feet in height, with 15 stars and 15 stripes as there were 15 states in the union in 1812. The stars on this flag were a little tilted to the left and right, but the national flag today has all stars pointing at the top of the flag. Adopted in 1960.

National Motto: In God, We Trust. "In God, we trust" was adopted to be the motto of the United States in 1952 by a joint resolution of the Congress. It replaced the common but unofficial motto of 'E pluribus unum' (Latin for 'one out of many') that is inscribed on the great seal. It appeared on the country's coins in 1864. The motto was printed on paper currency (one-dollar note) in 1957. It is also the motto of the Republic of Nicaragua and the American state of Florida.

Symbol of Freedom: Liberty Bell. The liberty bell is regarded as the international symbol of freedom witnessing the Independence Hall, Philadelphia. It weighs around 2000 pounds and is made of copper and tin. The bell had rung in 1774 to announce the opening of the First Continental Congress, and in 1776, when the Declaration of Independence was signed. It called upon the citizens of Philadelphia for reading the Declaration of Independence. The following words inscribed on it give the message of liberty: *"Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof..."*

Questions:

1. Why is the United States described as one of the most culturally diverse countries in the world?
2. How many languages are spoken in the United States?
3. How many percent of Americans identify themselves as Christians?
4. Name some items of clothing that are closely associated with Americans
5. What does the term "As American as apple pie" mean?
6. Name the dates of holidays celebrated in the United States.
7. Who wrote the lyrics to the anthem of USA?
8. When did the image of Uncle Sam appear?
9. What's the meaning of the Statue of Liberty?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match first halves of sentences (1-5) with their second halves (a-f)

1. The United States is the third
2. A child is born
3. A person dies
4. The population of the US was built on
5. Every 33 seconds

a. largest country in the world with a population of more than 325 million.
b. every 12 seconds.
c. Every 8 seconds.
d. A new immigrant moves to the United States.
e. immigration from other countries.

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. *The bald eagle* has recently been chosen as the national bird of the United States.
2. *The national anthem, 'The Star-Spangled Banner,'* has a colorful history.
3. The melody of the national anthem was taken from the tune of a popular French song.
4. *Uncle Sam*, whose image appeared during the War of 1812, is a symbol of the U.S. government.
5. *The Statue of Liberty* was a gift to the United States from the people of Germany.
6. The date of the Declaration of Independence is inscribed on the tablet in the Statue of Liberty.

III. Fill the gaps with given numbers

15, 42, 15, 30, 13, 1960

The national flag of the United States of America has _____ stars (representing 50 states) on the background of blue and ___ stripes (representing 13 colonies that rebelled against British rule and became the first states of the Union) in red and white. The flag was originally ordered to be made during the preparations for the Battle of Baltimore. It was _____ feet in length and _____ feet in height, with _____ stars and 15 stripes as there were _____ states in the union in 1812. The stars on this flag were a little tilted to the left and right, but the national flag today has all stars pointing at the top of the flag. Adopted in _____.

Vocabulary:

Encompass – окружать – qurshab olmoq
Background – происхождение – kelib chiqish
Immigration –иммиграция - immigratsiya
Diverse –разнообразный – turfa
Melt – расплавить - erimoq
Native – родной - mahalliy
Religious – религиозный - diniy
Occupation –род занятий - bandlik
Cuisine –кухня - oshxona
Declare –объявить – e'lon qilmoq
Celebration – праздник –bayram

THEME 6. Mass Media, Economy and Sport in the USA.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. Newspapers and magazines

1.2. TV and Radio

1.3. Sport in the USA

1.4. Economy in the USA

Key words: commercial newspapers , magazine tabloids, Con ventional television, Associated Press, Communication Commission, social glue, extreme sports ,international transactions ,manufacturing ,top-performing economies, consumer

1.1 Newspaper and magazines.

Mass communication has revolutionized the modern world. In the United States it has given rise to what social observers sometimes call a media state, a society in which access to power is through the media. The term media, understood broadly, includes any channel of information through which information can pass. Since a democracy largely depends on public opinion, all those involved in communicating information inevitably have an important role to play. The print and broadcasting media not only convey information to the public, but also influence public opinion. Television, with access to virtually every American household, is a powerful influence.

On average, American viewers watch TV about six hours a day, usually tuned to one of the national commercial networks: ABC (the American Broadcasting Corporation), NBC (the National Broadcasting Company), CBS (Columbia Broadcasting System) or Fox Broadcasting Company. These stations attract about 98 per cent of TV audiences.

Theoretically, anyone in the United States can start a newspaper or a magazine, but to become a radio or television broadcaster one must be granted a portion of the limited radio-television spectrum by the government's licensing board, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). For the most part, the American broadcasting system has always been a commercial system. It is supported by

money from businesses that pay to advertise goods or services to the audience. Advertising messages are usually presented as 15,30 or 60-second commercial announcements before, during and after programs. During a sixty-minute TV program you can expect to see about twelve minutes of commercials.

Commercial broadcasting is a huge industry bringing in profits of about 1.8 billion dollars annually. The commercial networks broadcast a variety of shows: news, drama, soap operas, comedy, sports, music, movies, children's programs, game shows and talk shows. There are a lot of competitions for viewers, especially during prime time, from 7 to 11 pm.

PBS (Public Broadcasting Service), supported by government and private funding, is the only noncommercial network. It broadcasts more serious drama, performing arts, science, public-affairs documentaries and educational children's programs. *Sesame Street*, the most popular children's show on PBS, appears on TV stations all over the world. All five networks broadcast twenty-four hours a day.

Viewers whose tastes are not satisfied by the many offerings of network and local programs are now increasing their options by subscribing to cable television. About 35 million Americans pay a monthly fee for greater selection. There are up to 500 cable stations. Two well-known ones are HBO (Home Box Office), which shows movies, and CNN, which specializes in news.

Satellite TV was originally designed to offer a greater selection of programs to people in rural areas that could not easily connected to the cable system. It now provides anybody who is ready to have a satellite dish installed in his or her backyard with the same programming as cable TV. Conventional television has had to struggle to retain its audience as people switch over to cable viewing, satellite TV or renting video cassettes.

Across the United States there are more than nine thousand radio stations. Almost all of them are commercial, except for National Public Radio stations. Listeners can tune into all kinds of stations: pop or classical music, news, sport, or community radio. Talk radio shows are very popular. Listeners call in and ask the

talk-show host or guests questions about anything from cooking or car repair to politics or health. Callers often get a chance to give their opinion on the air.

There's something for everyone to read with 1,700 daily and 6,300 weekly newspapers. Eight out of ten Americans read a tabloid or standard newspaper every day. Often newspapers are delivered early in the morning so people can read them before leaving home. Standard newspapers have long articles about local, national and international news, while tabloid newspapers include short news articles and a lot of photos, stories about famous people, advice columns and horoscopes. Most newspapers are regional rather than national, although some are distributed all over America. *The New York Times*, for example, is available in New York and in most big cities. The paper with the largest circulation is *The Wall Street Journal*, which specializes in business news.

Nowadays Americans consider television their most important source of news, and a majority ranks television as the most believable news source. Accordingly, newspapers have to cope with competition from radio and television.

Newspapers

The power of press in the USA is enormous. The U.S. Constitution guarantees freedom of press and the press media act as a check on governmental action.

The largest daily newspapers published in the USA are The Wall Street Journal, The New York Times(which was published in 1851 by Henry Raymond), The Washington Post, The Los Angeles Times, The Chicago Tribune and many others. All these are serious „quality papers“ or broadsheets, which offer more serious information about politics, home and national news, also information about sport, art, music...But it does not offer only government information as some foreigners believe.

The New York Times is ranked as „the world´s top daily.“

There are state, city, and local newspapers. The national newspapers are very important and there are several good local newspapers. But some people read only one of the quality national newspapers. A few of the best-known newspapers such as The Wall Street Journal can be found throughout the country. Yet, one wouldn´t

expect The Milwaukee Journal to be read in Boston, or The Boston Globe in Houston. There has been one attempt to publish a truly national newspaper – USA Today.

The most popular are tabloids, which are more popular than broadsheets. Articles in these papers are not very long and serious, they usually have a huge picture, they use strip cartoons and humorous drawings and reacting for some political events. They have a big sport page and offer information about TV-programmes, pop-stars, competitions, advertisements and bring some home news. The most popular tabloid in US is USA Today´s.

The largest American newspapers also collect and sell news, news features and photographs to many other newspapers in the USA and abroad.

American newspapers get much of their news from large news agencies just like newspapers of other countries of the world. The two U.S. news agencies are there: AP (Associated Press) and UPI (United Press International). These agencies have strict rules. These prevent newspapers from changing the original AP and UPI news stories too much and still claiming these agencies as their source. And also the International News Service we can include to the largest international agencies of the English-speaking countries.

There is no official or government-owned news agency in the U.S., there are no official or government-owned newspapers. There is no state censorship, no „official secrets act.“

Reading the Sunday paper is an American tradition. There are 762 Sunday newspapers in US !!! Two media giants – Joseph Pulitzer and William Randolph Hearts, who compete each other – began building their newspaper empires after the American Civil War (1861 – 1865). They restored to „yellow journalism“ – sensational reporting and their aim was to attract readers. And according to Joseph Pulitzer The Pulitzer Price is the most prestigious appreciation for journalists which afford yearly.

Magazines

There are over 11 000 magazines published in the United States. They cover all topics and interests and some have also international editions, e. g. National Geographic or Vogue.

There is great number and variety of different types of radio and TV stations in the USA. All radio and television stations in the United States of America must be licensed to broadcast by the Federal Communication Commision (FCC), which is an independent federal agency. Each license is given for a few years only and can be taken away if a radio or TV station does not keep the regulation of the FCC.

1.2. TV and Radio

Since World War II Television has developed into the most popular medium in the U.S., with enormous influence on the country´s elections and way of life.

There are three privately owned networks which offer free programming financed by commercials – NBC, CBS and ABC.

In the meantime, a four major commercial network, FOX, has come into being and challenged the big three networks, several local TV stations have switched their affiliation from one of the big three to the newcomer. Two more national networks – WB and UPN – have also come along, and the number of cable television channels continues to expand.

There are 335 public television stations across the U.S. and each of which is independent and serves its community´s interests.

RADIO

The beginning of commercial radio broadcasts in 1920 brought a new source of information and entertainment directly into American homes. Radio could hardly compete with television´s visual presentation of drama, comedy, and variety acts, many radio stations switched to a format of recorded music mixed with news and features. Starting in the 1950s, radios became standard accessories in American automobiles.

The expansion of FM radio, which has better sound quality but a more limited signal range than AM, let to a split in radio programming in the 1970s and 1980s.

FM came to dominate the music side of programming, while AM has shifted mainly to all-news and talk formats.

In the U.S. besides the 10 000 commercial radio stations are also 1 400 public radio stations, which published for educational purposes and are financed by public funds and private donations.

Hundreds of radio stations of USA broadcast in other languages than English for minorities. Millions of American TV viewers watch television transmitted over cables. The cable TV is very popular as it increases the number of channels. Since the time the U.S. launched the world´s first communication space satellite in 1965, the TV has become quite common in the U.S.A. and other countries of the world.

In 1993, TIME became the first magazine to offer an on-line edition. And in 1996, software magnate Bill Gates started SLATE, a magazine covering politics and culture that was intended to available exclusively on-line (and Slate´s publisher soon decided to add a print version).

Most American newspapers are available on the Internet, and anyone with a personal computer and a link to the Internet can scan papers from across the country.

1.3. Sport in the USA

Sports play an important role in American society. They enjoy tremendous popularity but more important they are vehicles for transmitting such values as justice, fair play, and teamwork. Sports have contributed to racial and social integration and over history have been a "social glue" bonding the country together.

The United States offers limitless opportunities to engage in sports - either as a participant or as a spectator. Team sports were a part of life in colonial North America. Native American peoples played a variety of ball games including some that may be viewed as earlier forms of lacrosse. The typical American sports of baseball, basketball and football, however, arose from games that were brought to America by the first settlers that arrived from Europe in the 17th century. These

games were re-fashioned and elaborated in the course of the 19th century and are now the most popular sports in the United States. Various social rituals have grown up around athletic contests. The local high school football or basketball game represents the biggest event of the week for residents in many communities across the United States. Fans of major university and professional football teams often gather in parking lots outside stadiums to eat a "tailgate" picnic lunch before kickoff, and for parties in front of television sets in each other's homes during the professional championship game, the Super Bowl. Thousands of baseball fans flee the snow and ice of the North for a week or two each winter by making a pilgrimage to training camps in the South and Southwest to watch up close their favorite players prepare for the spring opening of the professional baseball season.

Individual competitions accompanied the growth of team sports. Shooting and fishing contests were part of the colonial experience, as were running, boxing, and horse racing. Golf and tennis emerged in the 1800s. Recent decades have given birth to a wide variety of challenging activities and contests such as sail boarding, mountain biking, and sport climbing, collectively referred to as "extreme sports".

Americans' interest in sports seems excessive to many foreign visitors. Television networks spend millions of dollars arranging to telecast sports events. Publications about sports sell widely. In the US professional athletes can become national heroes.

American football is the most popular sport to watch in the United States, followed by baseball, basketball, hockey, and soccer. Tennis, golf, wrestling, auto racing, arena football, field lacrosse, box lacrosse and volleyball are also popular sports in the country.

Based on revenue, the four major professional sports leagues in the United States are Major League Baseball (MLB), the National Basketball Association (NBA), the National Football League (NFL), and the National Hockey League (NHL). The market for professional sports in the United States is roughly $69 billion, roughly 50% larger than that of all of Europe, the Middle East, and Africa combined. All four enjoy wide-ranging domestic media coverage and are

considered the preeminent leagues in their respective sports in the world, although American football does not have a substantial following in other nations. Three of those leagues have teams that represent Canadian cities, and all four are the most financially lucrative sports leagues of their sport. Major League Soccer (MLS), which also includes teams based in Canada, is sometimes included in a "top five" of leagues.

Professional teams in all major sports in the United States operate as franchises within a league, meaning that a team may move to a different city if the team's owners believe there would be a financial benefit, but franchise moves are usually subject to some form of league-level approval. All major sports leagues use a similar type of regular-season schedule with a post-season playoff tournament. In addition to the major league–level organizations, several sports also have professional minor leagues, active in smaller cities across the country. As in Canada and Australia, sports leagues in the United States do not practice promotion and relegation, unlike many sports leagues in Europe.

Sports are particularly associated with education in the United States, with most high schools and universities having organized sports, and this is a unique sporting footprint for the U.S. College sports competitions play an important role in the American sporting culture, and college basketball and college football are as popular as professional sports in some parts of the country. The major sanctioning body for college sports is the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA).

Unlike most other nations, the United States government does not provide funding for sports nor for the United States Olympic Committee.

Sports are associated with educational institutions in a way is unique. High schools have coaches as faculty members, and school teams compete with each other.Nowhere else in the world are sports associated with colleges and universities in the way they are in the States. College sports, especially football, are conducted in an atmosphere of intense excitement and pageantry. Games between teams attract nationwide television audiences. The sport that is most popular in most parts of the world - soccer - is not well known in the US. The most

popular sports are American football and baseball, games that are not played in large number of countries.Sports play such an important role in American life that the sociology of sports, sports medicine, and sports psychology have become respectable specializations. Many Americans jog every day, or play tennis or bridge two or three times a week. They go on ski trips and hunting expeditions that require weeks of planning and organizing. In the Americans' view, all these activities are worth the discomfort they may cause because they contribute to health and physical fitness. That is probably why Americans are known as a healthy nation.

1.4 Economy in the USA.

The economy of the United States is a highly developed mixed economy. It is the world's largest economy by nominal GDP and the second-largest by purchasing power parity (PPP). It also has the world's seventh-highest per capita GDP (nominal) and the eleventh-highest per capita GDP (PPP) in 2016. The US has a highly diversified, world-leading industrial sector. It is also a high-technology innovator with the second-largest industrial output in the world. The U.S. dollar is the currency most used in international transactions and is the world's foremost reserve currency, backed by its science and technology, its military, the full faith of the U.S. government to reimburse its debts, its central role in a range of international institutions since World War II, and the petrodollar system. Several countries use it as their official currency, and in many others, it is the de facto currency. Its largest trading partners are China, Canada, Mexico, Japan, Germany, South Korea, United Kingdom, France, India, and Taiwan.

The nation's economy is fueled by abundant natural resources, a well-developed infrastructure, and high productivity. It has the second-highest total-estimated value of natural resources, valued at $45 trillion in 2016. Americans have the highest average household and employee income among OECD nations, and in 2010, they had the fourth-highest median household income, down from second-highest in 2007. The United States has held the world's largest national economy

(not including colonial empires) since at least the 1890s. It is the world's largest producer of oil and natural gas. In 2016, it was the world's largest trading nation as well as its second-largest manufacturer, representing a fifth of the global manufacturing output. The U.S. also has both the largest economy and the largest industrial sector, at 2005 prices according to the UNCTAD. The U.S. not only has the largest internal market for goods, but also dominates the trade in services. U.S. total trade amounted to $4.92 trillion in 2016. Of the world's 500 largest companies, 134 are headquartered in the US.

The U.S. has one of the world's largest and most influential financial markets. The New York Stock Exchange is by far the world's largest stock exchange by market capitalization. Foreign investments made in the U.S. total almost $2.4 trillion, while American investments in foreign countries total to over $3.3 trillion. The U.S. economy is ranked first in international ranking on venture capital and Global Research and Development funding. Consumer spending comprised 68% of the U.S. economy in 2018. The U.S. has the world's largest consumer market, with a household final consumption expenditure five times larger than that of Japan. The nation's labor market has attracted immigrants from all over the world and its net migration rate is among the highest in the world. The U.S. is one of the top-performing economies in studies such as the Ease of Doing Business Index, the Global Competitiveness Report, and others.

The U.S. economy experienced a serious economic downturn during the Great Recession which technically lasted from December 2007 – June 2009. However, real GDP regained its pre-crisis (late 2007) peak by 2011, household net worth by Q2 2012, non-farm payroll jobs by May 2014, and the unemployment rate by September 2015. Each of these variables continued into post-recession record territory following those dates, with the U.S. recovery becoming the second-longest on record in April 2018. Debt held by the public, a measure of national debt, was approximately 77% of GDP in 2017, ranked the 43rd highest out of 207 countries. Income inequality ranked 41st highest among 156 countries in 2017, and ranks among the highest in income inequality compared to other Western nations.

Questions:

1. What American people need to start their own newspaper or magazine?
2. What are commercial networks broadcast?
3. What is the main channel supported both by government and private funding?
4. Which broadcasting system annually increases the budget of the USA?
5. What was the main idea of designing satellite TV?
6. What are the names of main newspapers in the USA?
7. How many radio stations there are in the USA?

I. Do the following statements agree with the information given in the reading? Match them as TRUE\FALSE

TRUE- if the statement agrees with the information

FALSE – if the statement contradicts the information

1. Anyone in the United States can start a newspaper or a magazine
2. To become a radio or television broadcaster one don`t have to be granted a by the government's licensing board
3. The Washington Post, The Los Angeles Times, The Chicago Tribune offer more serious information about politics, home and national news
4. The New York Times and *The Wall Street Journal are* specialized in business news
5. Best-known newspapers include short news articles and a lot of photos, stories about famous people, advice columns and horoscopes
6. Shooting and fishing contests are the most favourite ones
7. TIME became the first magazine in 1993
8. Canada and Australia sports leagues in the United States do not practice promotion and relegation like sports leagues in Europe

II. Check your understanding: multiple choice

1. Hundreds of radio stations of USA broadcast in **other languages/English/Spanish**
2. Commercial broadcasting is a huge industry bringing in profits of about **1.8/2.3/1.6** billion dollars annually

3. U.S. launched the world´s first communication space satellite in **1961 /1965/1966**

4. The national newspapers are very important and there are several good **commercial /business/local** newspapers

5. PBS (Public Broadcasting Service), supported by **government / both government and private funding/private funding**

6. The most popular are tabloids, these papers are not very long and serious, they usually have a **huge pictures/ strip cartoons / humorous drawings/each of them**

7. There are over **7 000 /11 000 /12 000** magazines published in the United States

8. There are **1 400/1 300 /1 250** public radio stations, which published for educational purposes and are financed by public funds and private donations.

9. American **football/baseball/wrestling** does not have a substantial following in other nations

10. Largest trading partners are **China, Canada, Mexico/ Japan, Germany, Australia/United Kingdom, France, UAE**

III. Fill the gaps

The Wall Street Journal, The New York Times, The Wall Street Journal, The Chicago Tribune , politics

Most newspapers are regional rather than national, although some are distributed all over America.1 ……. for example, is available in New York and in most big cities. The paper with the largest circulation is 2……..…which specializes in business news. The largest daily newspapers published in the USA are 3…….,The New York Times (which was published in 1851 by Henry Raymond), The Washington Post, The Los Angeles Times, 4 …….and many others. All these are serious „quality papers“ or broadsheets, which offer more serious information about 5……., home and national news, also information about sport, art, music...

Vocabulary:

Broadcasting – радиовещание – радио эштириш
Transmit – передавать – юбормоқ
Local – местный –маҳаллий
Employee – служащий – ишчи
Investments - инвестиции – сармоя

Commercial – коммерческий – савдо-сотиқ
Advertising – рекламирование – рекламалаштириш
Consumer – потребитель – харидор
Tabloid – малоформатная газета - кичик форматдаги газета

CHAPTER III. OTHER ENGLISH-SPEAKING COUNTRIES

THEME 1. Australia

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. Geography
1.2. Population
1.3. Climate
1.4. Government
1.5. Capital

Key words:Proportionately, density, merge, possesses, ash, bauxite, peninsula, consumption, mutton, lamb, deficient, overexploited, unfit, immigration, specified, residual, suffrage, subterranean, bicentennial.

1.1. Geography

Australia is the world's smallest continent and sixth-largest country. With proportionately more desert land than any other continent, Australia has a low

population density. Lying completely in the Southern Hemisphere, Australia is bounded by the Indian Ocean on the west and south and by the Pacific Ocean on the east. These oceans merge on the north in the Arafura Sea between Australia and Indonesia and New Guinea, and on the south in the Bass Strain. The coastline length, estimate at 19,200km, id remarkably short for so large an area a result of the relative lack of indentation. Major inlets other than the Gulf of CARPENTARIA and the great AUSTRALIAN BIGHT are few.

Australia is primarily a flat low-lying plateau, with about 95 percent of the land standing less than 600m above sea level. The continent was not affected by recent geological mountain building forces, and all its landforms are highly eroded; Australia's mountains reach only 2,228m In Mount KOSCIUSKO in southeastern New South Wales.

Australia can be divided in to three major physical regions: the vast Western Plateau, the Eastern Highlands, and the GREAT ARTESIAN BASIN.

Mineral Resources

Australia possesses enormous mineral resources. Coal reserves are large, and although much is high in ash content, about a third is of coking quality. New discoveries of iron ore in the Hamersley Range (Pilbara region) of the northwest have helped to keep annual production increasing. Vast bauxite reserves are concentrates in the Grove and Cape York peninsulas. Other abundant metal ores include zinc, lead, nickel, and copper. Gemstones include sapphires from the northern Great Dividing Range and the distinctive Australia fire opals from inland fields in the southeast.

Petroleum, first exploited in Queensland, now comes chiefly from the continental shelf off northwestern Australia and the Bass Strain. Production is increasing and supplies about two-third of domestic consumption. Recoverable reserves of natural gas were little topped before 1969 but by 1990 output was about 20,090 million cu m a year. At double the present output and consumption rates, coal, oil, and gas would last 100 to 300 years.

Agriculture

Arable land amounts to only 6 percent of the continent's area, while about 58 percent is in pasture used mainly for low-intensity grazing by cattle and sheep. The arable land, 80 percent of which is under cultivation, is confined to the nations humid and sub humid areas located in the southwestern of the continent and in a narrow fringe extending inland (no more than 250km) from the southeastern and eastern coastlands between Cairns in the north and Adelaide in the south. The lands used for pasture are concentrated in the generally drier parts of the continent, some 25 percent of all Australia being occupied by 16,000 ranches, or stations, averaging 75,000 acres in extend.

Australia is an important producer and exporter of agricultural products. It leads the world in wool production and is also an important supplier of wheat, other cereals, dairy produce, meat, sugar, and fruit. Australia's sheep constitute about 12 percent of the world's total sheep population and yield about 25 percent of the world's wool as well as substantial quantities of mutton and lamb. Wheat, the chief crop, occupies nearly 70 percent of all cultivated land and is grown in almost all the states. Sugar is grown in the subtropical areas of coastal Queensland and New South Wales. The major fruit products include barriers, apples, bananas, and pin apples.

Water Resources

The driest of continents, Australia must carefully regulate its existing water resources. Even in some externally drained basins, water supply is at times deficient. Significant groundwater reserves occur beneath one quarter of Australia, most prominently in the Great Artesian Basin, but they are generally overexploited and such in unfit for human consumption.

1.2. Population

In 1994, Australia had an estimated population of 17,800,000, up from 10,100, 000in 1960. Immigration continues to play a major in population increase, more than 4 million new immigrants having settled in Australia since 1945. Despite a more diversified pattern of immigration in recent years, the population of Australia remains ethnically dominated by a majority that is of British descent (more than 90

percent from Great Britain and Ireland) or is recently arrived from the United Kingdom. Smaller ethnic groups of European origin include many of Greek, German, Italian, and Yugoslav descent. Aborigines and people of past Aboriginal descent constitute a small minority (only 1.5 percent of the total population); there are small but growing Chinese and other Asian minorities. Some of the descendants of Australia's pre-European inhabitants, the Aborigines and Torres Strait Islanders, live on designated tribal lands, and others work o ranches or live in the deteriorated inner-city areas along the coast. In general, the Aborigines have a higher birthrate and a shorter life expectancy than other Australians do.

1.3. Climate

The climate of Australia varies with latitude. Because the continent lacks relief features and is favored with the moderating influence of the surrounding seas, few dramatic regional variations exist. The northern part of the continents is tropical and influenced by the trade winds. The southern parts lie in the belt of westerly winds and have a more temperate climate. The vast center of the continent is arid and extremely hot during the summer (December to March).

The tropical region, and especially the northern coast, experiences a hot, wet summer. The average January temperature in DARWIN is 28 degrees C, and the average annual rainfall is 1,240 mm, nearly 80 percent of which falls between December and March.

In winter, hurricanes tend to develop over the Coral and Arafura seas, some following the part of the East Australia Current as far south as Sydney. Hurricanes in 1974 devastated Darwin and flooded BRISBANE.

Southern Australia has mild, wet winters, resembling a Mediterranean climate. The southwest experiences hot, dry summers, dominated by subtropical high-pressure system. Average temperatures at Perth are 23 degrees C in January and 13 degrees C in July; the average annual rainfall is 900mm. A similar climate affects an area around ADELAIDE. Southern New South Wales, Victoria, and Tasmania have rainfall maximums in winter, but they receive the most dependable year-round precipitation of any region in Australia. The eastern coast of Queensland and

New South Wales receive tropical summer rain. With increasing distance southward, however, temperatures decline and the seasonality of rainfall becomes less marked. On the southern Eastern Highlands is a sub humid belt, important for agriculture.

About half of Australia is arid. Dry seasons average eight months in length and a mean annual rainfall of 255mm or less. Summers are hot and winters are warm, and the daily temperature variation is great. The average temperature at ALICE SPRINGS is 26 degrees C in January and 12 degrees C in July. As with most of Australia, precipitation is undependable, and on rare occasions floods occur. For instance, 450,000 sq km of the Lake Eyre Basin (a region that normally receives only about 125 mm of rain annually) were completely flooded in 1974. The arid zone is encircles by a broad belt of semiarid climate. North of the tropic of Capricorn this belt records a wet summer season; south of the tropic of Capricorn, and especially in southwest Australia, the average summer is distinctly dry. Extreme high temperatures in the arid and semiarid regions exceed 38 degrees C.

Snow is rare except in the higher parts of the southern Eastern Highlands, principally the Snowy Mountains.

1.4. Government

The commonwealth of Australia is a fully independent member of the Commonwealth of Nations. The Australian constitution (1901) resembles that of the United States in that it establishes a federal from of government; the powers of the Commonwealth are specified, leaving residual powers to the states.

Supreme executive powers (although more ceremonial than actual) rest in the British monarch, represented in Australia by the governor-general and in each of the six states by a governor. These officials are appointed by the British monarch, but the government in 1993 proposed making Australia a republic, severing its to the British crown by the year 2001.

Legislative power rest with the parliament of Australia, which consists of an upper house, the Senate, and the House of Representatives. The leader of the

majority party in the House is named prime minister and appoints a cabinet from members of the Senate and House.

The Senate consists of ten senators from each state and two from each territory, each elected for 6-year terms. The number of representatives is proportional to the populations of the states and territories, and House elections are held at lest once every three years. Members of Parliament are elected by universal adult suffrage, and voting is compulsory.

The principal political parties are the Australian labor, the Liberal party, and the National Country Party.

The organization of the stage governments is similar to that of the Commonwealth. Each state has an appointed governor, an elected premier, and a legislature. State governments are responsible for education, health, public utilities, justice, and transportations. Since 1974 both the Northern territory and the Australian Capital Territory have had elected legislative assemblies.

1.5.Capital

Canberra, the national capital of Australia, is located in the AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY, an enclave in New South Wales. It is 250 km southwest of Sydney in southeast Australia. Canberra is small compared with most state capitals, but it is Australia's largest inland city and has a population of 278,900. it has long had a high growth rate, having mushroomed from less than 25,000 in the early 1950s.The people of Canberra are predominantly of British ancestry, but embassy staff members are a conspicuous foreign element. Government is the leading employer, primarily at the white-collar level. The city has little industry.

Canberra is a model of city planning and rigid zoning. Its focal point is the large artificial lake, Burley Griffin. Another distinguishing characteristic is Canberra's landscaping'; the many trees and shrubs have been carefully selected to provide variety in co lour and texture. For instance, the city gives free plants to owners of new houses. Other visual attractions are the official buildings-especially the embassies-the Australian War Memorial, the National Library, and the new Parliament House.Construction of Canberra began in 1913, based on a design by

Walter Burley GRIFFIN a Chicago architect. Although Griffin was discharged in 1920, the city developed in basic accord with his plan. The first Parliament House opened in 1927; a new, largely subterranean Parliament House on Capital Hill opened for Australia's 1988 bicentennial.

Questions:

1. Where is Australia situated?
2. What water bodies wash the continent?
3. How many major physical regions are there in Australia?
4. What are the three Australian deserts?
5. What places in Australia are least populated and least developed?
6. In what way is Australia divided?
7. What is type of climate in Australia?
8. Can you name Australian states and territories? What are they?
9. What is the capital of Australia? Where is it?
10. How many parts Australia is divided?
11. For what is the government of Australia responsible?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match first halves of statements (1-6) with their second halves (a-f)

1. Australia can be divided into	a. Varies with latitude
2. Australia possesses	b.3 major physical regions
3. Australia is	c.World's smallest continent
4. Australia is bounded by	d.Enormous mineral resources
5. Australia has a	e.The Indian Ocean to the west
6. Australia's weather varies	f.Low population density

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. Australia is one of the biggest continents.
2. Australia has borders with the Pacific Ocean to the East.
3. Australia is a dependent member of the Commonwealth of Nations.

4. Snow is rare in some parts of the US.
5. There are 3 main principal political parties.

III. Fill the gaps

Planning, texture, provide, Parliament, design, bicentennial

Canberra is a model of city _____ and rigid zoning. Its focal point is the large artificial lake, Burley Griffin. Another distinguishing characteristic is Canberra's landscaping'; the many trees and shrubs have been carefully selected to _____ variety in colour and _____. For instance, the city gives free plants to owners of new houses. Other visual attractions are the official buildings-especially the embassies-the Australian War Memorial, the National Library, and the new Parliament House.Construction of Canberra began in 1913, based on a _____ by Walter Burley GRIFFIN a Chicago architect. Although Griffin was discharged in 1920, the city developed in basic accord with his plan. The first _____ House opened in 1927; a new, largely subterranean Parliament House on Capital Hill opened for Australia's 1988 _____.

Vocabulary:

Principal – главный - asosiy
Independent – Независимый - mustaqil
Governor – Губернатор - hukmdor
Locate –назначать место – joyni aniqlamoq
High –высокий - baland
Tropical –тропический - tropik
Precipitation –осадки – namgarchilik
Latitude –широта – kenglik
Ethnic –этнический - etnik
Moderate –средний – o'rtacha

THEME 2. New Zealand.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. Geography
1.2. Population
1.3. Climate

1.4. Government
1.5. Capital

Key words: isolated land, Polynesian people, volcanic activity, self-governing dominion, earthquakes, subtropical, New Zealand Bill of Rights, administrative subdivisions.

1.1. Geography

New Zealand, an island nation in the middle latitudes of the Southern Hemisphere, is the most physically isolated of the advanced industrialized countries. Its nearest neighbour, Australia is some 1,9000km (1,200mi) to the northwest. New Zealand is bordered by the TASMAN SEA on the west and the South Pacific Ocean on the east. The country is about the size of Colorado and larger than Great Britain. It comprises two main islands, the North Island (114,469km) and the South Island (150,660 sq km); Steward Island (1,751 sq km); and numerous tiny islands and islets, including the ANTIPODES ISLANDS and the AUCKLAND ISLANDS. In addition, New Zealand administers the ROSS DEPENDENCY in Antarctica and the TOKELAU ISLANDS, NIUE, and the COOK ISLANDS are self-governing, but New Zealand manages their external affairs, and their residents are citizens of New Zealand.

The MAORI, a Polynesian people, reached the islands in about AD 900. The Dutch were the first European to arrive, in 1642, but the area remained relatively unknown until the arrival of Capt. James COOK in 1769. The Treaty of WAITANGI (1840) ceded sovereignty of the area to Great Britain while granting the Maoris continued possession of their lands and other holdings. New Zealand becomes an internally self-governing dominion within the British Empire in 1907 and an independent member of the Commonwealth of the Nations in 1947. Although New Zealand is an isolated land, it’s foreign policy is not isolationist. It retains close ties to Great Britain and plays an increasing role in Pacific affairs.

The two major islands of New Zealand, which are separated by the narrow COOK STRAIT, could be considered parts of two separate continents. The North Island and the northwest corner of the South Island are carried on the same

continental plate as India and Australia, while the South Island is on the Pacific plate. The two plates slide past each other in opposite directions along the Alpine Fault. This movement creates many earthquakes in New Zealand.

New Zealand is generally mountainous, with only about 30 percent of the land classified as flat or rolling. The North Island was shaped by internal volcanic activity and includes regions of boiling mud and steam, which are often harnessed for power and heat. The highest point on the island is Raunchy volcano (2,797m). The South Island has some 20 peaks exceeding 3,000m. The highest, Mount Cook (3,764m), is part of the impressive Southern Alps range.

New Zealand most fertile soils were found in the Canterbury Plains near Christchurch and the Southland-Otego alluvial plains at the southern end of the South Island. New Zealand has more than 3 billion tons of coal reserves and abundant offshore natural-gas reserves. The country is also rich in hydroelectric potential. It was though to lack petroleum until 1988, when a field estimated to contain 40 million barrels of petroleum was discovered in the western part of the North Island. Other resources include geothermal energy, iron sands, and limestone.

Although fewer than 1 percent of New Zealand people are farmers, agricultural productions has generated most of the nation's wealth. New Zealand is the world's third-largest producer and second-largest exporter of wool and produces approximately 50 percent of the world's lamb and mutton exports. Sheep in New Zealand outnumber people by more than 15.

There are also more than 8 million cattle, and the country is the world's largest and most efficient exporter of dairy products. New Zealand is also a major exporter of fresh fruit, beef and fish. The government is funding research to make farming more efficient and adaptable to world market trends. The strategy is to grow, make, and market anything the climate will support and a world market will buy. Thus, the emphasis is on marketing food for specialized markets rather than on bulk exporting.

1.2. Population

New Zealand is one nation and two peoples and is only new coming to grips with its biculturalism. The initials Maori settlers are far outnumbered by people of European descent, primarily of England and Scottish heritage. The pakeha (the Maori word for European settlers) make up 86 percent of the total population. Maori constitute approximately 9 percent and other Pacific islanders 3 percent. Immigration to New Zealand is not significant. A recent census revealed that 85 percent of the residents were New Zealanders by birth, and the country suffered a net out-migration of more than 30,000 between 1982 due to adverse economic conditions.

1.3. Climate

New Zealand weather and climate is of paramount importance to the people of New Zealand, as many New Zealander's make their living from the land. New Zealand has mild temperatures, moderately high rainfall, and many hours of sunshine throughout most of the country. New Zealand's climate is dominated by two main geographical features: the mountains and the sea.

New Zealand lies between 37 and 47 degrees south of the Tropic of Capricorn. Both the North and South Islands of New Zealand enjoy moderate, maritime climate, weather and temperatures.

New Zealand: Climate and Weather

New Zealand weather and climate is of paramount importance to the people of New Zealand, as many New Zealander's make their living from the land. New Zealand has mild temperatures, moderately high rainfall, and many hours of sunshine throughout most of the country. New Zealand's climate is dominated by two main geographical features: the mountains and the sea.

New Zealand: Temperatures

New Zealand has a largely temperate climate. While the far north has subtropical weather during summer, and inland alpine areas of the South Island can be as cold as -10 C in winter, most of the country lies close to the coast, which means mild temperatures, moderate rainfall, and abundant sunshine.

Because New Zealand lies in the Southern Hemisphere, the average temperature decreases as you travel south. The north of New Zealand is subtropical and the south temperate. The warmest months are December, January and February, and the coldest June, July and August. In summer, the average maximum temperature ranges between 20 - 30ºC and in winter between 10 - 15ºC.

New Zealand Regional Temperatures

The following temperatures are mean daily maximum and minimum temperatures in Celsius and Fahrenheit for New Zealand. Rainfall is indicated as the average rainfall days per season.

New Zealand: Sunshine

Most places in New Zealand receive over 2,000 hours of sunshine a year, with the sunniest areas—Bay of Plenty, Hawke's Bay, Nelson and Marlborough—receiving over 2,350 hours.

As New Zealand observes daylight saving, during summer months daylight can last up until 9.00 pm.

1.4.Government

New Zealand is a constitutional monarchy with a parliamentary democracy. Although it has no codified constitution, the Constitution Act 1986 is the principal formal statement of New Zealand's constitutional structure. The constitution has been described as "largely unwritten" and a "mixture of statutes and constitutional convention." Queen Elizabeth II is the head of state and is titled Queen of New Zealand under the Royal Titles Act 1974. She is represented by the Governor-General, whom she appoints on the exclusive advice of the Prime Minister. The current Governor-General is Anand Satyanand.

The Governor-General exercises the Crown's prerogative powers, such as the power to appoint and dismiss ministers and to dissolve Parliament, and in rare situations, the reserve powers. The Governor-General also chairs the Executive Council, which is a formal committee consisting of all ministers of the Crown. The main *constitutional* function of the governor-general is to "arrange for the leader of the majority political party to form a government"; by constitutional convention,

the governor-general "acts on the advice of ministers who have majority support in parliament."

Members of the Executive Council are required to be Members of Parliament, and most are also in Cabinet. Cabinet is the most senior policy-making body and is led by the Prime Minister, who is also, by convention, the Parliamentary leader of the governing party or coalition. This is the highest policymaking body in the government.

The New Zealand Parliament has only one chamber, the House of Representatives, which usually seats 120 Members of Parliament.

Parliamentary general elections are held every three years under a form of proportional representation called Mixed Member Proportional. The Economist magazine explains: "Under MMP (Mixed Member Proportional) there is usually a 120-seat parliament; an extra seat can sometimes be added to ensure truly proportional representation. Of the total number of seats, 65 electorate (directly elected constituency) seats are contested on the old first-past-the-post basis, including seven seats reserved for the indigenous Māori people. The remaining 55 or so seats are allocated so that representation in parliament reflects overall support for each party (the party vote).

Under the MMP system, a party has either to win a constituency seat or more than 5% of the total party vote in order to gain representation in parliament. The government can continue to rule only if it retains majority support in the House of Representatives, or can secure the support of other political parties to give it a majority to pass legislation and survive parliamentary confidence votes." The 2008 General Election created an 'overhang' of two extra seats, occupied by the Māori Party, due to that party winning more seats in electorates than the number of seats its proportion of the party vote would have given it.

New Zealand government "Beehive" and the Parliament Buildings, in Wellington.

From October 2005 until November 2008, the Labour-led government was in formal coalition with the Progressive Party, Jim Anderton being its only MP. In

addition, New Zealand First and United Future provided confidence and supply in return for their leaders being ministers outside cabinet. An arrangement was also made with the Green Party, which gave a commitment not to vote against the government on confidence and supply. In 2007 Labour also had the proxy vote of Taito Phillip Field, a former Labour MP. These arrangements assured the government of a majority of seven MPs on confidence votes.

Labour was defeated by the National Party in the general elections of November 8, 2008. Following the victory, National leader John Key moved quickly to form a government, negotiating coalition agreements with the right-wing ACT party, led by Rodney Hide, the centrist United Future party, albeit with its single seat held by leader Peter Dunne, and the Māori Party, led by Tariana Turia and Pita Sharples. Each of these leaders are to hold ministerial posts but remain outside of Cabinet. There are three parties in Opposition: the Labour Party, led by Phil Goff; the Greens, co-led by Metiria Turei and Russel Norman and the Progressive Party, under Jim Anderton. The new executive was sworn in on 19 November 2008.

The highest court in New Zealand is the Supreme Court of New Zealand, established in 2004 following the passage of the Supreme Court Act 2003. The act abolished the option to appeal to the Privy Council in London. The current Chief Justice is Dame Sian Elias. New Zealand's judiciary also includes the Court of Appeal; the High Court, which deals with serious criminal offences and civil matters at the trial level and with appeals from lower courts and tribunals; and subordinate courts.

While the Judiciary can sometimes place limits on acts of Parliament, and the 1990 New Zealand Bill of Rights enables some review by the Judiciary of executive action, there is no document ascertaining formal power of judicial review. Its constitutional independence from Parliament is maintained by non-political appointments and strict rules regarding tenure in office.

New Zealand is the only country in the world in which all the highest offices in the land have been occupied simultaneously by women: Queen Elizabeth II, Governor-General Dame Silvia Cartwright, Prime Minister Helen Clark, Speaker

of the House of RepresentativesMargaret Wilson and Chief Justice Dame Sian Elias were all in office between March 2005 and August 2006. New Zealand's largest listed company, Telecom New Zealand, had a woman – Theresa Gattung – as its CEO at the time.

1.5.Capital

A **capital city** (or just **capital**) is the area of a *country, province, region, or state*, regarded as enjoying primary status; although there are exceptions, a capital is almost always a city which physically encompasses the offices and meeting places of the seat of government and is fixed by law. An alternate term is **political capital**, but this phrase has a second meaning based on an alternative sense of *capital*. Often, a capital city is the largest city in that country but not always.

The word *capital* is derived from the Latin*caput* meaning "head," and, in the United States, the related term *Capitol* refers to the building where government business is chiefly conducted.

The seats of government in major sub-state jurisdictions are often called "capitals", but this is typically the case only in countries with some degree of federalism, where major substate jurisdictions have an element of sovereignty. In unitary states, "administrative center" or other similar terms are typically used. For example, the seat of government in a U.S. state is usually called its "capital", but the main city in a region of England is usually not, even though in Ireland, a county's main town is usually regarded as its capital. At lower administrative subdivisions, terms such as county town, county seat, or borough seat are usually used.

Historically, the major economic center of a state or region often becomes the focal point of political power, and becomes a capital through conquest or amalgamation. This was the case for London, Berlin, and Moscow. The capital naturally attracts the politically motivated and those whose skills are needed for efficient administration of government such as lawyers, journalists, and public policy researchers. A capital that is the prime economic, cultural, or intellectual center is sometimes referred to as a primate city. Such is certainly the case with

Paris, London and Madrid among national capitals, and Milan, Irkutsk or Phoenix in their respective state or province.

Capitals are sometimes sited to discourage further growth in an existing major city. Brasília was situated in Brazil's interior because the old capital, Rio de Janeiro, and southeastern Brazil in general, were considered over-crowded.

The convergence of political and economic or cultural power is by no means universal. Traditional capitals may be economically eclipsed by provincial rivals, as occurred with Nanjing by Shanghai. The decline of a dynasty or culture could also mean the extinction of its capital city, as occurred with Babylon and Cahokia. Many present-day capital cities, such as New Delhi, Abuja, Ankara, Brasília, Canberra, Astana, Islamabad, Ottawa and Washington, D.C. are planned cities that were built as an alternative to the seat of government residing in an established population centre for various reasons. In many cases in their own right they have become gradually established as new business or commercial centres.

🗐Questions:

1. What areas border New Zealand?
2. What are two major islands of New Zealand?
3. How is the climate of New Zealand?
4. What kind of government is New Zealand?
5. Who is the head of New Zealand?
6. How many chambers does New Zealand have?
7. How often are parliamentary general elections held?
8. Tell some information on the capital of New Zealand.

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match first halves (1-6) of the statements with their second halves (a-f)

1. New Zealand is

2. New Zealand receive over

3. New Zealand has

4. The warmest months

5. Queen Elizabeth II is

6. New Zealand has only

a. One chamber.

b. The head of state.

c. Are December, January, and February.

d. Over 2000 hours of sunshine a year.

e. A constitutional monarchy.

f. A largely temperate climate.

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. New Zealand is a monarchy with no democracy.
2. New Zealand is the world's largest and most efficient exporter of dairy products.
3. New Zealand is mountainous.
4. There are three major islands of New Zealand.
5. Maori settles in the islands in about AD 900.
6. More than half of the population are farmers.

III. Fill the gaps

General, representation, seats, allocated, indigenous, support

Parliamentary _____elections are held every three years under a form of proportional representation called Mixed Member Proportional. The Economist magazine explains: "Under MMP (Mixed Member Proportional) there is usually a 120-seat parliament; an extra seat can sometimes be added to ensure truly proportional representation. Of the total number of _____, 65 electorate (directly elected constituency) seats are contested on the old first-past-the-post basis, including seven seats reserved for the _____ Māori people. The remaining 55 or so seats are _____ so that _____ in parliament reflects overall _____ for each party (the party vote).

Vocabulary:

Mountainous –горный – tog'li
Island – остров - orol
Wealth – богатство - boylik
Internal – внутренний - ichki
Classify – классифицировать - tasniflamoq
Efficient – эффективный – samarali
Paramount – первостепенное значение – yuksak
Dismiss – уволить - chetlashtirmoq
Coalition – коалиция -koalitsiya
Appoint – назначить – tayinlamoq

THEME 3. Canada.

Questions to be discussed:

1.1. Geography
1.2. Population
1.3. Climate
1.4. Government
1.5. Capital

Key words: Hemisphere, exclusion, lumber, pulp, hay, pasture, unsettled, marine, steppe-type, subarctic, precipitation, unicameral, metropolitan, ethnic mix, "open space therapy", innovative.

1.1. Geography

Canada the world's second-largest country (after Russia), is the largest country in the Western Hemisphere and comprises all the North American continent north of the United States, with the exclusion of Alaska, Greenland, and the tiny French islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon. Its most easterly point is Cape Spear, Newfoundland, and its western limit is Mount St. Elias in the Yukon Territory, near the Alaska border. Its east-west extent is 5,514km (3,426mi) and is so wide that six time zones lie within its borders. The southernmost point is Middle Island, in Lake Erie; the northern tip of land is Cape Columbia, on ELLEMERE ISLANDS, 1,850 km north of the Arctic Circle.

Canada is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the west by the Pacific Ocean and on the east by the Atlantic Ocean and its associated bodies of water, including Baffin Bay and the Labrador Sea. Its only international land boundary is which the United States—on the northwestern, between Canada and the state of Alaska, and on the south, where the U.S-Canada border is 6,416km long.

Canada is rich in natural recourses =. It is a world leader of mineral exports and produces and exports many of the minerals needed for modern industrial economies, although a few minerals, such as manganese, chromium, bauxite, and tin, must be imported. Its soils, which are especially rich in the three prairie

provinces of Alberta, Saskatchewan, and Manitoba, are intensively utilized and make Canada one of the world's largest exporters of agricultural products.

Forests cover much of the land, and Canada is the world's largest exporter of newsprint and a leading supplier of lumber, pulp, paper, and wood products.

Agriculture

Although by climate and topography to the southern of the country, agriculture remains an important segment of Canada's economy. Because the large production exceeds the needs of the small population, much agricultural produce is exported. Roughly half of all farm income is divided from field crops and half from livestock. The principal field crops are wheat (of which Canada is the world's second-largest exporter, after United States), barley and oats. Most of the grain crops are grown in the three Prairie Provinces. Other important western crops are rye, flaxseed, and rapeseed. In other parts of Canada mixed farming predominates, with the output of field crops tied to the dairy and livestock economy and more land devoted to hay, pasture, and feed grains. Prince Edward Island and New Brunswick grew large quantities potatoes, and soybeans are produced mainly in southwestern Ontario.

Most of the farms in Canada raise livestock. Generally, beef cattle are raised in Alberta and the Cordilleran Region, and dairy cattle in the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Lowlands. Hogs, the fourth-largest agricultural product by value (after wheat, cattle, and dairy products), are raised in southern Ontario, Quebec and Alberta.

Since the 1920s the number of farm workers has declined as farms have become more commercialized, and mechanized and larger. The acreage devote to farmland as also declined, with the significant decline in the east not offset by the slight increase in the west. Most farms are owner-operated.

Canada has a dual cultural heritage that stems from the British conquest (1763) of the French colony of New France. Today both French and English are official languages. The threat of separatism by the largely French-speaking province of Quebec was an issue through the 1980s and early 1990s; although a 1980 referendum mandating the sovereignty of Quebec was defeated by Quebec's

electorate. The 1987 Meech Lake accord, an addition to the 1982 constitution that acknowledges Quebec's distinctness, failed in 1990 when two provinces refused to finalize it.

The name Canada is thought to be derived from Kanata, the Huron-Iroquois word meaning 'village' or 'community'.

1.2. Population

Canada has a total estimate population about 29 million, or approximately one-tenth that of the United States. About 80 percent of this number lives within 160km of the U.S. border on the south; approximately 89 percent of the country is virtually unsettled. Because of these vast tracts of virtually uninhabited northern forests and tundra, Canada has only one of the lowest population densities in the world.

Canada has two official languages, English and French, which have equal status in affairs of the federal and provincial government and federal courts. Of the total population, more than 60 percent speak English and significant monitories speak French or are bilingual. A few speak neither language. The majority of new immigrants prefer to learn English rather than French and to enroll their children in which the language of instruction is English.

1.3. Climate

The populated southern areas of Canada have a wide variety of temperate climates. The Pacific coastal areas have a temperate marine west coast type of climate, with cool summers in the -16 degrees -18 degrees C range and mild winter in the 0 degrees -4 degrees C range. The interior plains have a middle-latitude steppe-type climate in the drier southern sections and a more humid and extreme continental type of climate elsewhere. Temperatures average about -20 degrees to – 15 degrees C in long winters and -18 degrees C in short summers.

The Great Lakes-St. Lawrence Lowland and the Appalachian Region have a more humid version of a continental type of climate. Both areas have long, cold winter, with January averages about -10 degrees C in the eastern sections and 4-

degrres C in the Ontario Peninsula, and short, warm summers with average temperatures of near -20 degrees C.

Precipitation is heaviest in the west, moisture-laden winds from the Pacific Ocean and forced to rise over the mountainous coastal regions and bring more than 5,000mm of rain a year to some areas, although average annual precipitation is 1,525 to 2,540mm. Precipitation is least in the Interior Plains, where many areas receive less than 500mm a year. Expect for the low-lying Pacific Coast areas, winter precipitation throughout Canada is usually in the form of snow, and thick blankets of accumulated snow cover most of Canada east of the Rockies for 3 to 6 months of the year.

The sparsely settled northern areas have an arctic or tundra, type of climate on the islands and northern coastal areas and a subarctic type of climate in the vast transitional area between the frozen north and the settled south. The arctic type of climate is characterized by long, very cold winter, with average temperatures far below freezing and no summer month with in average temperature higher than 10 degrees C. in the subarctic areas, winters are similarly long and bitterly cold, but summers are warm enough (more than 10 degrees C) to support vegetation growth. Precipitation is generally light in the western areas of the arctic and subarctic regions and heavier in northern Quebec and Labrador. Despite the low precipitation, snow covers the groind permanently for more than 6 month of every year.

1.4. Government

Canada is a self-governing federal union of ten provinces (Alberta, British Columbia, Manitoba, New Brunswick, Newfoundland, Nova Scotia, Ontario, Prince Edward Island, Quebec, and Saskatchewan) and two territories (Northwest Territories and Yukon Territory) with the Commonwealth of Nations. The core of the constitution is derived, with modifications, from the BRITISH NORTH AMERICAN ACT of 1867, patriated(brought under direct Canadian control) and renamed the Constitution Act in 1982. Queen Elizabeth II is head of state and is

represented in the federal government by the governor-general and in the provinces by lieutenant governors.

Legislative powder is vested in Parliament, which comprises the queen; the Senate, with 104 members appointed to age 75 (or for life before 1965) and House of Commons, with 295 elected members (as of the 1993 election). National elections are held at least once every five years or whenever the majority party is voted down or calls an election. The leader of the political party with the largest number of seats in the House of Commons usually serves as prime minister.

Provincial legislative power, which extends to education, municipal affairs, direct taxation, and civil law, s vested in unicameral, elected legislatures known as legislative assemblies expect in Newfoundland, where it is the House of Assembly, and Quebec, where it is the National Assembly. The legislatures of the provinces are headed by premiers, who are usually the leaders of the majority party. The provincial legislatures are elected every five years or less.

The principal political parties are the Liberal party, Progressive Conservatives, and the New Democratic Party. Major regional parties include the Bloc Quebecois and the western provinces Reform Party, which become the second and third largest parties in Parliament in 1993.

1.5. Capital

Ottawa, the capital of Canada and seat of the Ottawa-Carleton municipal region in Ontario, is in the southeastern part of the country. Ottawa is the fourth—largest metropolitan area in Canada, with a population of 920,857, of which 313,987 live within the city limits. The city is located at the juncture of the Ottawa, Rideau, and Gatineau rivers. The Rideau River plunges over Rideau Falls to join the Ottawa River from the south. The Gatineau River enters from the north without a fall, but a short distance up the Ottawa itself is it impressive Chaudière Falls. The Ottawa River marks the provincial boundary between Ontario and Quebec, with the city of Ottawa on the Ontario side and the large secondary city of Hull on the Quebec side. Ottawa's Lower Town contains much of the mid-19th –century city, including the restored 'Mile of History'.

Ottawa was named for the Ottawa Indian tribe, although the name previously been applied to the river in recent years it has been one of the nation's fastest growing urban areas. Temperatures average -10 degrees C in January and 21 degrees C in July. The populace of Ottawa-Hull is representative of the Canadian ethnic mix and includes substantial French-Canadian population. As probably the most bilingual city in Canada, Ottawa is also the epitome of the Canadian bicultural 'ideal'.

The industrial heritage of early Ottawa is still maintained in the forest products plants and hydroelectric facilities on both sides of the river. Industries include paper mills and appliance, furniture, and cement manufacturing. In addition, Ottawa has considerable commercial activity, based in port on a prosperous agricultural hinterland, a number of financial institutions, and an important tourist industry. The major employment in Ottawa, however, is the federal government.

Ottawa is noted for its parks, gardens, scenic drivers, and monuments. A long-range National Capital Plan was promulgated after World War II for development of the metropolitan are in diverse ways, some of them quiet innovative. Ottawa had one of the first pedestrian shopping malls in the world. An 'open space therapy' plan provides for an extensive green belt around the city. Points of interest include the Parliament Buildings, National Library, National Museum of science and Technology, and the new National Gallery (1988. Carleton University and the University of Ottawa are in the city.

Ottawa was chosen as the capital for United Canada in 1857, despite bitter opposition from four rival cities. The choice was confirmed when the new Dominion of Canada was established in 1867.

Questions:

1. Which countries were bounded with Canada?
2. What kind of natural resources does Canada have?
3. What goods does Canada export?
4. What is the official language in Canada?
5. What is the meaning of the word "Canada"?
6. How much population is there in Canada?

7. What is the difference between climate of Canada and USA?
8. How many parties are there in Canada?
9. What is the capital of Canada?
10. What is the main product of Canada?

Post-reading tasks:

I. Match first halves (1-6) with their second halves (a-f)

1. Legislative powder is
2. National elections
3. Provincial legislative power
4. The principal political parties are
5. The legislatures of the provinces are
6. Ottawa

g. Was chosen as a capital in 1857.
h. Vested in Parliament.
i. Extends to education
j. The Liberal Party, Progressive Conservatives and the New Democratic Party.
k. Elected every five years or less.
l. Are held at least once every five years.

II. Identify whether the statement is True (statement agrees with the passage) or False (statement contradicts the passage)

1. Ottawa is the capital of Canada.
2. Agriculture is of minor importance in Canada's economy.
3. Canada is the world's largest country in the world.
4. Canada is bordered with the Arctic Ocean to the North.
5. Livestock is a common activity of farming in Canada.
6. The word Canada is thought to mean 'village' or 'community'

III. Fill the gaps

Municipal, join, secondary, distance, History, metropolitan

Ottawa, the capital of Canada and seat of the Ottawa-Carleton _____ region in Ontario, is in the southeastern part of the country. Ottawa is the fourth—largest _____ area in Canada, with a population of 920,857, of which 313,987 live within the city limits. The city is located at the juncture of the Ottawa, Rideau, and Gatineau rivers. The Rideau River plunges over Rideau Falls to _____ the Ottawa River from the south. The Gatineau River enters from the

north without a fall, but a short _____ up the Ottawa itself is it impressive Chaudière Falls. The Ottawa River marks the provincial boundary between Ontario and Quebec, with the city of Ottawa on the Ontario side and the large _____ city of Hull on the Quebec side. Ottawa's Lower Town contains much of the mid-19th –century city, including the restored 'Mile of _____'.

Vocabulary:

Municipal –муниципальный – shaharga oid
Metropolitan – столичный – poytaxtga oid
Livestock – домашний скот - chorva
Stem from – происходит от - -dan kelib chiqmoq
In addition – Дополнительно – Qo'shimcha tarzda
Tundra – тундра - tundra
Affairs – дела – ish, aloqalar
Comprise – включать – o'z ichiga olmoq
Elect – избрать - saylamoq
Substantial – существенно – sezilarli darajada

TOPICS FOR SELF – STUDY

№	Мустакил таълим Мавзулари
1	Formation of the UK
2	History of the UK (Anglo-Saxon, Norman Invasion and etc.)

3	Geographical position of the UK and mineral resources
4	Political system of the UK (formation of the Parliament)
5	Regions of the UK (England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland)
6	Political parties of the UK
7	Famous people and places of the UK
8	Scientific progress in the UK
9	Customs and traditions of the UK
10	Sports and Recreation of the UK
11	History of the USA (formation of the country)
12	The presidents of the USA
13	Geography of the USA
14	Political System of the USA (formation of the Senate)
15	Political Parties of the USA
16	States and capitals of the USA
17	Famous people and places of the USA
18	Scientific progress in the USA
19	Customs and traditions of the USA
20	Sports and Recreation of the USA
	Total

Theme 1. Formation of the UK

The formation of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland has involved personal and political union across Great Britain and the wider British Isles. The United Kingdom is the most recent of a number of sovereign states that have been established in Great Britain at different periods in history, in different combinations and under a variety of polities. Norman Davies has counted sixteen different states over the past 2,000 years.

By the start of the 16th century, the number of states in Great Britain had been reduced to two: the Kingdom of England (which included Wales and controlled Ireland) and the Kingdom of Scotland. The once independent Principality of

Wales fell under the control of English monarchs from the Statute of Rhuddlan in 1284. The Union of Crowns in 1603, the accidental consequence of a royal marriage one hundred years earlier, united the kingdoms in a personal union, though full political union in the form of the Kingdom of Great Britain required a Treaty of Union in 1706 and Acts of Union in 1707 (to ratify the Treaty).

The Act of Union 1800 united the Kingdom of Great Britain with the Kingdom of Ireland, which had been gradually brought under English control between 1541 and 1691, to form the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland in 1801. Independence for the Irish Free State in 1922 followed the partition of the island of Ireland two years previously, with six of the nine counties of the province of Ulster remaining within the UK, which then changed to the current name in 1927 of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

In the 20th century, the rise of Welsh and Scottish nationalism and resolution of the Troubles in Ireland resulted in the establishment of devolved parliaments or assemblies for Northern Ireland, Scotland and Wales.

England's conquest of Wales

Through internal struggles and dynastic marriage alliances, the Welsh became more united until Owain Gwynedd (1100–1170) became the first Welsh ruler to use the title princeps Wallensium (prince of the Welsh). After invading England, land-hungry Normans started pushing into the relatively weak Welsh Marches, setting up a number of lordships in the eastern part of the country and the border areas. In response, the usually fractious Welsh, who still retained control of the north and west of Wales, started to unite around leaders such as Owain Gwynedd's grandson Llywelyn the Great (1173–1240), who is known to have described himself as "prince of all North Wales".Llywelyn wrestled concessions out of the Magna Carta in 1215 and received the fealty of other Welsh lords in 1216 at the council at Aberdovey, becoming the first Prince of Wales. His grandson, Llywelyn ap Gruffudd, also secured the recognition of the title Prince of Wales from Henry III with the Treaty of Montgomery in 1267. However, a succession of disputes, including the imprisonment of Llywelyn's wife Eleanor, daughter of Simon de Montfort, culminated in the first invasion by Edward I. After a military defeat, the Treaty of Aberconwy in 1277 reasserted Llywelyn's fealty to the King of England.

In 1282, after another rebellion, Edward I finally made a permanent conquest. With Llywelyn dead, the King took over his lands and dispossessed various other allied princes of northern and western Wales, and across that area Edward established
the counties of Anglesey, Caernarfonshire, Flintshire, Merionethshire, Cardiganshi re and Carmarthenshire. The Statute of Rhuddlan formally established Edward's rule over Wales two years later although Welsh law continued to be used. Remaining princes became marcher lords. Edward's son (later Edward II), who had been born in Wales, was made Prince of Wales. The tradition of bestowing the title "Prince of Wales" on the heir of the British Monarch continues to the present day. To help maintain his dominance, Edward constructed a series of great stone castles.

Initially, the Crown had only indirect control over much of Wales because the Marcher lords (ruling over independent lordships in most of the country) were independent from direct Crown control. The exception was the lands of the Principality of Wales in the north and west of the country, which was held personally by the King (or the heir to the Crown) but was not incorporated into the Kingdom of England. However, between the 13th and 16th centuries the Crown gradually acquired most of the Marcher Lordships, usually through inheritance, until almost all of Wales came under Crown control. Nevertheless, the whole of Wales — that is, the Principality, Marcher Lordships held by the Crown and Marcher Lordships held by others — remained outside of the legal and constitutional structures of the Kingdom of England.

There was no major uprising except that led by Owain Glyndŵr a century later, against Henry IV of England. In 1404 Glyndŵr was crowned Prince of Wales in the presence of emissaries from France, Spain, and Scotland; he went on to hold parliamentary assemblies at several Welsh towns, including Machynlleth. The rebellion was ultimately to founder, however. Glyndŵr went into hiding in 1412, and peace was more or less restored in Wales by 1415.

The power of the Marcher lords was ended in 1535, when the political and administrative union of England and Wales was completed. The Laws in Wales Act 1535 annexed Wales to England and extended English law to Wales, abolished the marcher lordships and partitioned their lands into the counties of Brecon, Denbigh, Monmouth, Montgomery, and Radnor while adding parts to Gloucester, Hereford, and Salop. (Monmouthshire was wholly subsumed into the court structure of England and so omitted from the subsequent Laws in Wales Act of 1542, which led to ambiguity about its status as part of England or Wales.) The Act also extended the Law of England to both England and Wales and made English the only permissible language for official purposes. This had the effect of creating an English-speaking ruling class amongst the Welsh, at a time when Welsh was the language of the great majority. Wales was also now represented in Parliament at Westminster.

Theme 2. History of the UK

Britain is an island and this fact is more important than any other in understanding its history. The British Isles were the object of different foreign invasions for many times. The conquerors always had to have a dialogue with the conquered, producing sooner or later a mixed society with elements from both.

The island enters written history for the first time in a passage which records the visit to the Cornish peninsula of a Greek sea captain about 320 BC. The natives lived in wooden huts, storing their grain in underground silos and drinking a brew made from corn and honey.

We can’t but mention 4 main invasions on the British Isles. The first one took place in 400 BC when Celts armed with iron weapons conquered Kent and much of Southern England. They spread north and imposed their language on the natives.

Celts were ancient people who lived in Central and Western Europe and moved to the British Isles during the Iron Age. They were of striking appearance, tall with fair skin, blue eyes and blond hair. Their everyday dress consisted of a tunic over which they wore a cloak fastened by a brooch. They loved brilliant colours and gold jewellery. They were people with powerful traditions handed on from generation to generation by word of mouth. Their language had two forms: Gaelic, spoken in Ireland and Scotland and Brythonic, spoken in England and Wales. Nowadays only 3 of all the Celtic languages have survived: Welsh, which is the official language of Wales; Irish Gaelic, it's the first official language of the Republic of Ireland and Scots Gaelic which is still spoken in the hills and islands of the West of Scotland but which has no official status.

Traces of the Celtic culture can be mainly found in Lowland Britain. Originally this part had more favourable conditions for human settlements. Its greatest memorial is Stonehenge. It is very impressive with its huge stone circle and central platform the ruins of which people see today.

Stonehenge is the best known and probably the most remarkable of prehistoric remains in the UK. It has stood on Salisbury Plain for about 4.000 years. There have been many different theories about its original use but no one is certain why it was built.

One theory is that it was a place from where stars and planets could be observed. It was discovered the positions of some of the stones related to the movements of the sun and moon, so that the stones could be used as a calendar to predict such things as eclipses.

At one time people thought that Stonehenge was a Druid temple. Because Stonehenge had existed 1.000 years before the arrival of the Druids, this theory has been rejected.

Alongside the theories of the scholars are local legends. Stonehenge was built by the devil in a single night. He flew backwards and forwards between Ireland and Salisbury Plain, carrying the stones one by one and setting them in place. He wanted to convince people in his power. But a friar was hiding in ditch nearby. He surprised the devil who threw a stone which hit the friar on the heel. The stone which the devil threw, known as the 'heel stone' can be still seen by the side of the road.

However, geologists have shown that the stones came from Wales and north Wiltshire, not Ireland.

Also Celtic mythology is a remarkable cultural heritage. One of the brightest myths is the legend story about Balor and Lugh.

The Anglo-Saxon Invasion.

The beginning of the Anglo-Saxon invasion was in the 5th century BC when the Teutonic tribes started enslaving England. Their names were the Angles, the Saxons and the Jutes. At that time Celtic countries were a centre of light, especially Ireland where its monks and saints, when not fighting, were involved in treasuring the knowledge of Latin literature and lovingly illuminating the manuscripts of the Gospel. The Angles and the Saxons advanced from east to west along the Roman

roads, slaughtering and enslaving the Britons, sacking and burning Roman towns and villas. They destroyed almost every trace of the civilization of the Romans and established their kingdoms.

By the middle of the 7th century all England was converted to Christianity and it was Arthur, the half legendary King who was the British champion of Christianity against the heathen barbaric English.

One of the most powerful Anglo-Saxon kingdoms was Northumbria, when king Edwin advanced the frontier to the north and built his stronghold of Edinburgh. It was in this kingdom that English art and letters flowered for the first time: sculptured crosses were created and the Latin History of Bede was written in English.

The Viking Invasion.

The Vikings terrified the Anglo-Saxons as much as they themselves had terrified the Britons centuries before. They were people from Scandinavia whose life was working the land and fishing and who went on to attack and later settle in Britain. Each year bands of Vikings put out to sea , seeking out richer lands, bringing home gold, silver and jewels. Their leaders, kings or "jarls" began to divide and in the main it was Norwegians who settled in Scotland while in England it was the Danes. At first they put in puppet Anglo-Saxon kings but gradually they began to replace them with kings of their own.

We can't but mention the name of the Anglo-Saxon king who made the Danes retire the line of Watling Street and to leave the previously occupied lands, who rebuilt churches, brought over foreign scholars, founded schools for the sons of his nobleman. King Alfred the Great came to the throne in 871. During his reign which lasted almost 30 years the advance of the Vikings was halted and the foundations of the Kingdom of England were laid. Alfred the Great inherited the traditions of Anglo-Saxon Christian civilization, studied the laws made by the great Anglo-Saxon kings and then issued his own. He realized that the Anglo-Saxons must develop sea power so he ordered the construction of warships and secured his position.

The Norman Invasion.

England was submitted to a Danish King Conute in 1016 and became a part of the Great Danish Empire which included Denmark and Norway. After the Danish invasion King Edward I (the Confessor) was restored to the throne. Previously he was brought up to Normandy during the years of Danish rule and came to England with Norman friends and clergy.

Monkish in his ideas, his main interest was the church and it was he who founded the Westminster Abbey. During his reign there was a certain opposition to the Norman rule and Edward's brother-in-law named Harold, the Earl of Wessex, became the leader of anti - Norman party. So Harold II was the last Anglo – Saxon king before the Norman Conquest of England and it was he who headed the battle of Hastings in 1066, which decided the history of England and marked the beginning of the Norman invasion.

14th October 1066 is the most celebrated date in English history. On that day the crucial engagement between the English army under King Harold and the invading troops of William, Duke of Normandy took place. In preparation for the great confrontation two Norman castles were put up on English soil – at Pevensey and at Hastings.

William's well – trained army met the defending English forces. The battle ended with Harold's death from an arrow in the eye and the English were routed. William the Conqueror founded battle Abbey to atone for the terrible slaughter of this hand - to hand combat and the high altar stood on the very spot where Harold fell mortally wounded. A memorial stone marks the place today.

The English lost the battle because England was united only in name and there was no immediate resistance. Had it been a united country the battle of Hastings would not have decided its history. In just one day the invasion of England had succeeded but the crown was secured, fulfilling the promise made to William by King Edward the Confessor some 15 years earlier. The Normans imposed unity and linked it permanently with the culture of Southern Europe.

Theme 3. Geographical position of the UK and mineral resources

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is situated on the British Isles — a large group of islands lying off the north-western coast of Europe and separated from the continent by the English Channel and the Strait of Dover in the south and the North Sea in the east.

The British Isles consist of two large islands — Great Britain and Ireland — separated by the Irish Sea, and a lot of small islands, the main of which are the Isle of Wight in the English Channel, Anglesea and the Isle of Man in the Irish Sea, the Hebrides — a group of islands off the north-western coast of Scotland, and two groups of islands lying to the north of Scotland: the Orkney Islands and the Shetland Islands.

Historically the territory of the United Kingdom is divided into four parts: England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.

The total area of the United Kingdom is 244 square kilometres.

Nature

Great Britain is situated in the temperate zone of Europe. The nature of Great Britain is greatly affected by the sea: there is no place situated more than 100-120 km from the seashore, in the northern parts only 40-60 km.

The territory of Great Britain can be divided into three natural regions:

Scotland with highland and upland relief and coniferous and mixed forests;

Wales and mountainous England with upland considerably cut by ravines and valleys and covered with meadows, moorland and cultivated farmland, with patches of broadleaf forest;

South-east England with plain landscape, fertile soils, the predominance of cultivated farmland, with patches of broadleaf forest.

Coasts

The coastline of Great Britain is greatly indented, especially in the west and north-west where the mountains come close to the coast. The coasts of Scotland, as well as the coasts of the Hebrides, the Orkney Islands and the Shetland Islands, are cut by numerous fiords. In the south and east the land gradually slopes down towards the sea, and the coasts are sandy aid gentle, here and there interrupted by the ends of hiil-ranges, which form low cliffs.

Climate

Great Britain enjoys the humid and mild marine West-Coast climate with warm winters and cool summers and a lot of rainfall throughout the year.

The prevailing winds blow from the south-west. As these winds blow from the ocean, they are mild in winter and cool in summer, and are heavily charged with moisture at all times. As they approach the mountainous areas near the west coasts, they rise up the mountain slopes. Their temperature drops, which causes condensation of moisture in the form of rain. Therefore the wettest parts of Britain are those areas where high mountains lie near the west coast: the western Highlands of Scotland, the Lake District and North Wales. The eastern part of Britain is said to be in the rain-shadow, as the winds lose most of their moisture in their passage over the highlands of the west.

All parts of the British Isles receive rain at any time of the year. Still autumn and winter are the wettest seasons, except in the Thames District, where most rain falls in the summer half of the year. Oxford, for example, has 29 per cent of its rain in summer and only 22 per cent in winter.

As to temperature, Great Britain has warmer winters than any other district in the same latitude. It is due in large measure to the prevalence of mild southwest winds. Another factor is the Gulf Stream1, which flows from the Gulf of Mexico and brings much warmth from the equatorial regions to north-western Europe.

Economy

The United Kingdom was the first country in the world which became highly industrialized. During the rapid industrialization of the 19th century, one of the most important factors was that coal deposits were situated near the ground surface, which made mining easy. Coal mining is one of the most developed industries in Great Britain. The biggest coal and iron mines are in the north-east of England, near Newcastle, in Lancashire and Yorkshire; in Scotland near Glasgow; in Wales near Cardiff and Bristol.

Until recent times, Britain's heavy industry was mainly concentrated in the centre of England and in the London region. Such towns as Birmingham, Coventry and Sheffield produced heavy machines, railway carriages and motor-cars. In the 20th century new branches of industry have appeared: electronics, radio, chemical industry and others.

Of great importance for Britain is ship-building industry. It is concentrated in London, Glasgow, Newcastle, Liverpool and Belfast.

Great Britain produces a lot of wool, and woollen industry is developed in Yorkshire. British woollen products are exported to many countries.

Sea-ports play a great role in the life of the country. London, Liverpool and Glasgow are the biggest English ports, from which big liners go to all parts of the world. Great Britain exports industrial products to other countries and imports food and some other products. Sheep-farming, cattle-farming and dairy-farming are also important branches of Great Britain's economy. Chicken farms produce a great number of chickens and eggs for the population.

The south of England is often called the "Garden of England", because there are many gardens and orchards there. In the orchards people grow apples, pears, cherries, plums and other fruits, and there are also large plantations of different berries.

Mineral resources

Great Britain is not very rich in mineral resources; it has some deposits of coal and iron ore and vast deposits of oil and gas that were discovered in the North Sea.

Great Britain has few mineral resources. Coal and oil are the most important of them. Much of the country is under cultivation and about 20% of the land is covered by National Parks and others countryside conservation areas. Great Britain is one of the leading countries in the world. It has highly developed motorcar, shipbuilding, textile, and chemical and electronics industries which are centered in such cities as London, Glasgow, Manchester, Liverpool and Newcastle.

Great Britain is also famous for its woolens industry. English wool is exported to many countries.

Theme 4. Political system of the UK

Great Britain is a constitutional monarchy. This means that the official head of the State is the monarch (a king or a queen) but his or her powers are limited by the constitution. For years it has been Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II.

The Queen

(Her full title is Her Most Excellent Majesty Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and of her other Realms and Territories Queen, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith). Her surname (if she had any) would be Windsor.

The Queen is only a formal and symbolic head of State.

Her duties are, e.g,.- she holds receptions and State banquets, she visits various parts of Britain every year, she gives audiences to the Prime Minister and other important persons, she pays state visits and undertakes tours in other countries of the Commonwealth, she formally summons and dissolves Parliament.(„The Queen´s speech“, with which the Queen opens each session of Parliament is prepared by the government and read by the Queen). Besides she is commander-in-chief of all armed forces and the head of the Church of England. She also awards various titles and orders, etc.

But in reality, the Queen acts only on the advice of her ministers. The monarch´s power of veto, which is not clearly defined, has not been used for over

two hundred years, and so it has become a tradition that the royal power of veto doe not really exist at all.

Queen Elizabeth II was born on 21st April, 1926. She ascended the throne on 6th February 1952, after her father´s death (King George VI) and was crowned on 2nd June, 1953. The Queen´s husband is H.R.H. (Hir Royal Highness) Prince Philip, the Duke of Edinburgh. She has four children, three sons (Charles,Andrew, Edward) and a daughter(Anne). The eldest son, H.R.H. Prince Charles, Prince of Wales, is the heir to the throne. In Britain a daughter succeeds only if there are no sons in the royal family. (Therefore of the 40 monarchs since the Norman Conquest only six have been queens: Mary I, Elizabeth I, Mary II, Anne, Victoria, Elizabeth II.)

The Queen´s residence in London is Buckingham Palace, in Scotland Balmoral. Officially Queen´s birthday is celebrated on June 6th.

Despite the scandals in recent years, the Royal Family is still loved by many people. The most popular member of the family is now Prince William.

The Constitution of the UK is unwritten. It is based on custom, tradition and common law.

The Parliament is the supreme legislative body and the highest authority in the UK. It consists of the House of Commons and the House of Lords. British parliamentary system is one of the oldest in the world, it developed slowly during the 13th century after King John´s signature of Magna Carta in 1215. The two Houses of Parliament share the same building, the Palace of Westminster on the left bank of the Thames. The Queen formally summons and dissolves Parliament and opens each new session with a „speech from the throne“. The House of Lords is made up of hereditary and life peers and peeresses, two archbishops and 24 bishops of the Church of England. Its main function is law-making. The House of Commons consists of 650 paid members (MPs) who are elected at a General Election, which must be held every five years. Voting is not compulsory and is from the age of 18. Another important parliamentary task is answering the questions. From Monday to Thursday all ministers must answer MPs´questions for one hour (questionig time). Two days a week the Prime Minister must answer MPs´questions.

All speeches in the House of Commons are addressed to the Speaker who is elected at the beginning of each new Parliament to preside over the House. In the House of the Lords it is the Lord Chancellor.

Scottish Parliament. A new Scottish Parliament was elected in 1999 and sits in Edinburgh. This is the first time Scotland has had its own parliament in 300 years.

The Government is formed by the party which has the majority in Parliament and the Queen appoints its leader as the Prime Minister. The Cabinet is the executive organ of government. It´s made up by the leading ministers and heads of government departments (about 20 people). So the Government is a larger body (about 80 people).The second largest party forms the official Opposition with its

own leader and „shadow cabinet“. The Prime Minister´s official residence is 10 Downing Street.

Political Parties. In present-day Britain there are two big political parites, the Labour Party and the Conservative Party (they are still referred to as Tories). In foreign policy, the Conservatives and Labourists usually agree on the main issues and there is not much difference between the two parties.

Theme 5. Regions of the UK

England is one of the four countries which make up the United Kingdom. It is a country with over 60 counties in it including Lancashire and Cornwall. All three countries are on the island of Great Britain and are part of the UK.

About 54.8 million people live in England (2015 estimate). The capital city of England is London, which is also the biggest city in the country. Other large cities in England are Birmingham, Liverpool, Manchester, Leeds. In all cases, the population has spread outside the formal city limits, so that the term "built-up area" is often used instead of the city population.

The English flag is white, with a red cross. This cross is the cross of Saint George, who is the patron saint of England. Some other symbols used for England are a red rose and three lions.

Geography

England is the largest part of the island of Great Britain, and it is also the largest constituent country of the United Kingdom. Scotland and Wales are also part of Great Britain (and the UK), Scotland to the north and Wales to the west. To the east and south, and part of the west, England is bordered by sea. France is to the south, separated by the English Channel. The Channel Tunnel, (Chunnel) under the English Channel, connects England to northern France (and the rest of mainland Europe). Ireland is a large island to the west, divided into Northern Ireland which is part of the United Kingdom, and the Republic of Ireland.

London is the largest city and the capital. Other large cities are Birmingham, Manchester, Leeds, Sheffield, Bristol, Nottingham an d Liverpool. The longest river in England is the River Severn. Other large rivers are the Thames (which runs through London), the Trent and the Humber.

Climate

All of Great Britain has an oceanic climate. There can be a temperature difference of 5-10°c between the north and the south (the north is generally colder), and there is often snow in the north before there is in the south.

The prevailing wind for most of the year is from the Atlantic, to the west of England. Therefore, there is more rain on the western side of the country. The east is colder and drier than the west. The country usually has a mild climate because the Gulf Stream to the western side is warm water. The climate is warmer than it was 200 years ago, and now ice and snow are rare in the southern part of the country. Occasionally, air from the Arctic Circle comes down the eastern side of the country and the temperature can drop below 0°C.

Scotland (Scottish Gaelic: Alba) is a constituent country in the north-west part of Europe, and is one of the four countriesthat make up the United Kingdom. It is the northern half of the island of Great Britain, along with several offshore islands, with a population of about five million. To the south of Scotland is the border with England. Scotland has coasts on the North Sea to the east, the Atlantic Ocean to the west and the Irish Sea to the south-east.

Scotland was once an independent country and had its own monarch, but is now in a union with England, Wales and Northern Ireland, which we now call the United Kingdom. In 1603, the King of Scotland, James VI, became King of England too, because Queen Elizabeth I of England died. In 1707, the parliament of Scotland joined with the parliament of England to become the Parliament of Great Britain.

Even though Scotland is currently not independent, throughout history it has had its own legal system and culture. Since 1999, Scotland has had its own parliament, the Scottish Parliament. It was devolved from the British parliament, which still controls many things regarding Scotland.

On 18 September 2014, a referendum on independence from the United Kingdom took place. A majority (55%) voted to stay in the United Kingdom.

The Flag of Scotland is blue with a white diagonal cross. This is the cross of Saint Andrew, who is the patron saint of Scotland. Some other symbols used for Scotland are a thistle, and a lion rampant.

The capital city of Scotland is Edinburgh on the east coast, but the biggest city is Glasgow on the west coast. Other cities in Scotland are Aberdeen, Dundee, Inverness, Perth and Stirling.

Geography

The main part of Scotland makes up ⅓ of the size of the British Isles, and is to the northwest of mainland Europe.

The size of the land of Scotland is 78,772km² (30,414 sq mi). Scotland's only land border is with England, and runs for 96 kilometres (60 mi) across. The Atlantic Ocean borders the west coast and the North Sea is to the east. The island of Ireland is only 30 kilometres (20 mi) from the southern part of Kintyre, Norway is 305 kilometers (190 mi) to the east and the Faroe Islands are 270 kilometres (168 mi) to the north. Scotland's land are also includes several islands, including the Inner and Outer Hebrides off the west coast and the archipelagoes of Orkney and Shetland to the north of the mainland.

The north of Scotland has many mountains, and few people live there. Most people live in the lowlands (Edinburgh,Glasgow, Aberdeen and Dundee), or around the coast. South of the central belt are the Southern Uplands, another hilly place. On the west coast and in the north are a lot of islands. The tallest mountain in Scotland is Ben Nevis, which is also the tallest mountain in the British Isles.

History

Stirling Castle has stood for centuries on top of a volcanic crag. It defended the lowest ford of the River Forth. The castle underwent many sieges.

The history of Scotland begins around 1,800 years ago, when humans first began to live in Scotland after the end of the last ice age.Of the Stone Age, Bronze Age, and Iron Agecivilization that existed in the country, many fossils remain, but no written records were left behind. These people did not have writing.

The written history of Scotland begins when the Roman Empire came to Britain, and the Romans invaded what is now England and Wales, calling it Britannia. To the north was Caledonia, land not owned by the Romans. Its people were the Picts. This meant the Scottish were not affected by the Romans in the same way the English were. The sea was very important for trade reasons.

Because of where Scotland is in the world and its strong reliance on trade routes by sea, the nation held close links in the south and east with the Baltic countries, and through Ireland with France and Europe. Following the Acts of Union and Industrial Revolution, Scotland grew to be one of the largest commercial, intellectual and industrial states in Europe.

Wales (Welsh: Cymru) is a country on the island of Great Britain. It is one of the four countries that make up the United Kingdom. It is west of England, and east of the Irish Sea and Ireland.

Wales is one of the six Celtic nations. The native people of Wales, the Welsh, have their own culture and traditions. They have their own Celtic language, Welsh. Although not all Welsh people can speak Welsh, it is a real living language for about 20% of Welsh people. Nearly all Welsh people can speak English. Some of them speak only English. The Welsh language has official status in Wales.

Three million people live in Wales. Most of them live in the southern and eastern parts of the country. In this area is the capital and largest city of Wales, Cardiff, and the next largest city, Swansea.

People have lived in Wales for at least 29,000 years. The Romans first entered Wales in 43 AD, and took it around 77 AD.

The word 'Wales

The English words Wales and Welsh come from the old Germanic word Walh (plural: Walha). Walh itself came from a Celtic tribe, called the Volcae by the **Romans**. That was eventually used for the name of all Celts and later to all people who lived in the **Roman empire**. The **Anglo-Saxons** who lived in **England** and who spoke **Old English** called the people living in Wales Wælisc and the land itself Wēalas. Other names that come from these origins **Wallonia**, **Wallachia**, and Vlachs.

In the past, the words Wales and Welsh were used to mean anything that the **Anglo-Saxons** associated with the Celtic Britons. That included **Cornwall**, Walworth, and **Walton**, as well as things associated with non-Germanic Europeans like **walnuts**.

Industrial Revolution

At the start of the Industrial Revolution, the mining and metal industries transformed the country from an agricultural society into an industrial country. The new jobs created from the coalfields in South Wales caused a quick rise in the number of people living in Wales. This is the reason why two-thirds of the

population live in South Wales, mainly in the capital Cardiff (Caerdydd), as well as Swansea (Abertawe), Newport (Casnewydd), and in the nearby valleys. Now that the coal industry has become a lot smaller, Wales' economy depends mostly on the public sector, light and service industries and tourism. In 2010, the Gross Value Added of Wales was £45.5 billion - £15,145 per head, 74.0% of the average for the UK, and the lowest GVA per head in Britain.

Return of Welsh identity and devolution of Government

It took until the 19th Century for Welsh-centric politics to return to Wales. Liberalism in Wales, which was introduced in the early 20th century by Lloyd George, was overtaken by the growth of socialism and the Labour Party. However, Welsh pride got stronger, and in 1925 Plaid Cymru was made, which was the first political party to campaign for Welsh independence. In 1962, the Welsh Language Society was made to encourage the Welsh language, which had nearly disappeared during the take over by England. A big change was made in 1998, when the first Government of Wales for the country since its addition to the United Kingdom under the Government of Wales Act (1998). This created an Assembly for Wales, known in Welsh as the senedd. The Senedd has responsibility for a range of laws which have been devolvedfrom the main UK government in Westminster. This means the members of the Assembly can change certain laws in Wales to be different to the rest of the UK.

Northern Ireland (Irish: Tuaisceart Éireann, Ulster Scots: Norlin Airlann) is a constituent country of Ireland.The whole island of Ireland used to be a kingdom, called the Kingdom of Ireland. But after the Act of Union in the year 1800, it became part of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland. This stayed until 1922, after a civil war, when Ireland was divided into the Republic of Ireland, the sovereign state that takes up the southern part of the island, and Northern Ireland, which chose to stay as part of the UK.

About 1.8 million people live in Northern Ireland, which has the capital and largest city is Belfast.The historic administrative roles of its 6 counties have since 1972 been replaced by 26 unitary authourities Counties of Northern Ireland.

Sometimes people use other names for Northern Ireland. Some call it Ulster, even though some parts of Ulster are actually in the Republic of Ireland. Others call it "the North" or "the Six Counties", because they do not want to recognise that a part of the island of Ireland is not independent and is actually in the United Kingdom. Northern Ireland is the smallest part of the United Kingdom at 5,345 sq mi.

Languages

English is spoken by almost everyone in Northern Ireland. Another important language is Irish (sometimes called "Irish Gaelic") and a language known as Ulster Scots, which comes from Eastern Ulster and Lowland Scotland. The Irish language became less widely spoken in the 20th century, but a revival has led to increased usage, especially in Belfast, the Glens of Antrim and counties Tyrone and Fermanagh. This revival has been driven largely through the creation

of Irish-language schools. The Irish language is spoken by some nationalists (whether Catholic or Protestant) people. Ulster Scots is almost exclusive to areas of North Antrim and the Ards Peninsula.

Some languages like Chinese, Urdu or Polish are becoming more common in Northern Ireland as people from other countries move to Northern Ireland.

Theme 6. Political parties of the UK

The idea of political parties first took form in Britain and the Conservative Party claims to be the oldest political party in the world. Political parties began to form during the English civil wars of the 1640s and 1650s. First, there were Royalists and Parliamentarians; then Tories and Whigs. Whereas the Whigs wanted to curtail the power of the monarch, the Tories - today the Conservatives - were seen as the patriotic party.

Today there are four major political parties in the British parliamentary system:

The Conservative Party (frequently called the Tories) - the centre-Right party, currently led by Theresa May, which since 2010 has been in Government either in coalition (2010-2015) or alone (since 2015)

The Labour Party - the centre-Left party, led by Jeremy Corbyn, which was last in Government from 1997 to 2010

The Scottish National Party - the party supporting Scottish independence, which is led by Nicola Sturgeon

The Liberal Democrat Party (known as the Lib Dems) - the centrist, libertarian party, led by Vince Cable, which was the junior member of the Coalition Government of 2010-2015

In recent years, Britain has seen the rise of the UK Independence Party (UKIP) led by Nigel Farage until May 2015, which was formed in 1993 but achieved some spectacular performances in local and European elections in May 2014. In the general election of May 2015, it won 12.6% of the vote but, in the general election of June 2017, its vote collapsed to a mere 1.8%.

In addition to these five parties, there are some much smaller UK parties (notably the Green Party) and some parties which operate specifically in Wales (Plaid Cymru) or Northern Ireland (such as the Democratic Unionist Party for the loyalistsand Sinn Fein for the nationalists).

Each political party chooses its leader in a different way, but all involve all the Members of Parliament of the party and all the individual members of that party. By convention, the leader of the political party with the largest number of members in the House of Commons becomes the Prime Minster (formally at the invitation of the Queen).Political parties are an all-important feature of the British political system because:

The three main UK political parties in the UK have existed for a century or more and have a strong and stable 'brand image'.It is virtually impossible for someone to be elected to the House of Commons without being a member of an established political party.

All political parties strongly 'whip' their elected members which means that, on the vast majority of issues, Members of Parliament of the same party vote as a 'block'.Having said this, at least until the 2017 general election, the influence of the three main UK political parties was not as dominant as it was in the 1940s and 1950s because:

The three parties have smaller memberships than they did, since voters are much less inclined to join a political party.

The three parties secure a lower overall percentage of the total vote, since smaller parties between them now take a growing share of the vote.

Voters are much less 'tribal', not supporting the same party at every election, and much more likely to 'float', voting for different parties at successive elections.

The ideological differences between the parties are less than they were, with the parties adopting more 'pragmatic' positions on many issues.

For decades, therefore, the combined share of the vote taken by Conservatives and Labour diminished as the two-party model fractured. The last election dramatically reversed this trend as the two parties took 82.4% of the votes. The Liberal Democrats, the Greens and especially the UK Independence Party all did badly and now only have a mere 13 seats between them.

In the past, class was a major determinant of voting intention in British politics, with most working class electors voting Labour and most middle class electors voting Conservative. These days, class is much less important because:

Working class numbers have shrunk and now represent only 43% of the electorate.

Except at the extremes of wealth, lifestyles are more similar.

Class does not determine voting intention so much as values, trust, competence and (in Scotland) nationalism).In the British political system, there is a broad consensus between the major parties on:

the rule of law
the free market economy
the National Health Service (NHS)
membership of NATO and possession of a nuclear deterrent
The main differences between the political parties concern:
how to tackle poverty and inequality
the levels and forms of taxation
the extent of state intervention in the economy
the balance between collective rights and individual rights
the terms of the UK's departure from the European Union

Theme 7. Famous people and places of the UK

WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE
(1564-1616)

William Shakespeare was born in 1564, in Strat-ford-upon-Avon. He attended Stratford's grammar school, which still stands. The grammar school's curriculum at that time was limited to teaching pupils Latin, both spoken and written. The classical writers studied in the classroom influenced Shakespeare's plays and poetry; some of his ideas for plots and characters came from Ovid's tales, the plays of Terence and Plautus, and Roman history. We do not know when or why Shakespeare left Stratford for London, or what he was doing before becoming a professional actor and dramatist in the capital. He probably arrived in London in 1586 or 1587.

Shakespeare's reputation was established in London by 1592, when his earliest plays were written: Henry VI, The Two Gentlemen of Verona, and Titus Andronicus.

In 1594 Shakespeare joined other actors in forming a new theatre company, with Richard Burbage as its leading actor. For almost twenty years Shakespeare was a regular dramatist of this company and wrote on the average two plays a year. Burbage played the main roles, such as Richard IIP, Hamlet, Othello and Lear.

In 1599 the company of actors with which Shakespeare worked built a new theatre, the Globe. It was built on the south bank of the Thames. The Globe theatre is most closely associated with Shakespeare's plays. Two of his plays, Henry V and Julius Caesar, were almost certainly written during" the year in which the Globe opened.

Some of Shakespeare's most famous tragedies were written in the early 1600s. They include Hamlet, Othello, King Lear and Macbeth. His late plays, often known as romances, written between 1608 and 1612, include Cymbeline, The Winter's Tale and TheTempest.

Around 1611 Shakespeare left London and returned to Stratford. He died in Stratford at the age of fifty-two on April 23, 1616, and was buried in Holy Trinity Church.

Shakespeare's greatness lies in his humanism. He created a new epoch in world literature. For nearly four centuries Shakespeare has remained one of the best known playwrights and poets in the world. Every new generation of people finds in his works something important. As his contemporary Ben Jonson once said, Shakespeare "belongs not to the century, but to all times."

Isaac Newton

(1642-1727)

Sir Isaac Newton was born in a small village in Lincolnshire in the family of a poor farmer.Since childhood the boy was fond of science. He began his first experiments at school. After school he studied at Cambridge University, where, still a student, he formulated the binomial theorem.

Newton devoted all his life to scientific experimentation. Among his discoveries was the law of decomposition of light. He proved that the white light of the sun is made up of rays of light of all the colours of the rainbow.

Newton's greatest discovery was certainly the Law of Universal Gravitation. It is described in his book Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy. The fundamental principle of the book is that "every particle of matter is attracted by every other particle of matter with a force inversely proportional to the square of their distances apart". Applying the principle of gravitation, Newton proved that the power which guides the moon around the earth and the planets around the sun is the force of gravity. The fact that the earth is flattened at the poles because of rotation was also explained by the law of universal gravitation.

Newton was highly honoured by his countrymen. In 1703 he was elected President of the Royal Society.Much later, is the 20th century, another great scientist, Albert Einstein, who had a very high opinion of Newton's scientific achievements, wrote these words about him: "Nature to him was an open book, whose letters he could read without effort."Sir Isaac Newton died in 1727 and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

Florence Nightingale
(1820-1910)

Florence Nightingale was born in a very rich family. She got a very good education. She knew music, art, literature, Latin and Greek. She fluently spoke Italian, French and German. But ever since she was a child, she had nursed the villagers and the sick dogs and cats and horses round her home and wanted to be a professional nurse. She read books on nursing, reports of medical societies, histories of hospitals. She spent some time working as a nurse in hospitals in France and Germany. Finally she became superintendent of an Establishment for Gentlewomen during Illness in Harley Street, the fashionable street of London's most famous doctors. During the Crimean War (1853-1856) disturbing reports began to come to England of the terrible conditions in the hospitals where wounded soldiers were being treated. The chief hospital, at Scutari in Turkey, was an old, half broken building with a lot of rats and mice. But even this horrible place was overcrowded. There were not enough beds, and men were lying on the floor. There were no clean shirts or bedclothes.

In that terrible situation Sidney Herbert, the Minister for War", wrote to Florence Nightingale, asking her to go to the Crimea with a group of nurses. It took Florence Nightingale a week to get ready, and with thirty-eight nurses she sailed for Scutari.

When she arrived at Scutari, she found the conditions even worse than the reports had stated. She found that everything was lacking: furniture, clothes, towels, soap, knives, plates. There were no bandages, very few medicines, and almost no food. Luckily, she had brought with her large quantities of food and medical supplies. Everywhere she met with inefficiency and confusion; the officials in charge could not, or did not want to help her. She often worked for twenty-four hours on end, dressing wounds, helping surgeons in their operations. She and her nurses got down on their knees and scrubbed the floors and walls. She organized the cooking of the men's food and the washing of their clothes.

In 1855 she was made inspector of all the hospitals in the Crimea. It meant long, uncomfortable journeys in snow, rain and cold. She ruined her health, but refused to go home until the last soldier went. Only when peace was declared in 1856, she returned home — an invalid for life.

But she lived fifty-four years longer. Though she could not leave her house, she worked as much as she had done at Scutari. She changed the whole system of hospital organization of the army. She wrote books on nursing. She started the Nightingale Training School for Nurses at St. Thomas's Hospital, now one of the finest in the world.

Florence Nightingale lived a long and glorious life. She died in 1910 at the age of 90

Winston Churchill
(1874-1965)

Sir Winston Churchill, the eldest son of aristocrat Lord Randolph Churchill, was born on November 30, 1874. He is best known for his courageous leadership as Prime Minister for Great Britain when he led the British people from the danger of defeat to victory during the Second World War.

He graduated from the Royal Military College in Sandhurst. As a war correspondent he was captured during the Boer War in South Africa. After his escape he joined the Conservative Party. Since then he was taking an active part in Britain's political life, occupying a number of important posts in the government. Churchill succeeded Chamberlain as Prime Minister in 1940, and during the Second World War he successfully secured military aid and moral support from the United States. He travelled endlessly during the war, establishing close ties with the leaders of other nations and co-ordinated a military strategy which finally brought about Hitler's defeat.

His tireless efforts gained admiration from all over the world. Yet during the 1945 elections he was defeated by the Labour Party, which ruled until 1951. Churchill regained his power in 1951 and led Britain once again until 1955, when ill health forced him to resign.

He spent most of his last years writing (The History of the English-speaking People) and painting. In recognition of his historical studies he was given the Nobel Prize for Literature in 1953. In 1963 the US Congress made Winston Churchill an honorary American citizen.

Sir Winston Churchill died in 1965 at the age of 90. His death marked the end of an era in British history.

Margaret Thatcher
(1925-2013)

Margaret Thatcher is the second daughter of a grocer and a dressmaker, who became the first woman in European history to be elected Prime Minister. Then she became the first British Prime Minister in the twentieth century who won three consecutive terms. At the time of her resignation in 1990, she was the longest-serving Prime Minister of Britain since 1827, Some people consider her a true

political revolutionary because she broadened the base of the Conservative Party, including the middle class along with the wealthy aristocracy.

Margaret Thatcher was born on October 13, 1925, in Lincolnshire, England. She was a clever child. Early in life she decided to become a member of Parliament. She was educated at Somerville College and at Oxford University. She earned a master of arts degree from Oxford in 1950 and worked for a short time as a research chemist. In 1950 she married Denis Thatcher, a director of a paint firm. After her marriage she specialized in tax law.

In the 1959 elections Thatcher won a seat in Parliament. Because of her debating skills she soon became prominent among other politicians. In 1974 she became the leader of the Conservative Party.

When the Conservatives won a decisive victory in the 1979 general elections, Thatcher became Prime Minister. As Prime Minister she limited government control, giving individuals greater independence from the state and ending government interference in the economy. Thatcher became known as the Iron Lady because of her strict control over her cabinet and the country's economic policies.

During her third term Thatcher continued the "Thatcher revolution" by returning education, health care and housing to private control.

Margaret Thatcher resigned from office in 1990. Margaret Thatcher is certainly an outstanding figure in Britain's political life. According to political observers, she brought long-needed changes to British government and society.

While it's not impossible to plan a trip to the UK without visiting London, it's certainly not to be advised, as the nation's sprawling capital boasts plenty of attractions to keep you busy. If history is your thing, be sure to visit the Tower of London. Beside the spectacular Tower Bridge on the banks of the Thames, this former palace and prison includes highlights such as the iconic 1,000-year-old White Tower, with its displays of armor and weaponry, and the Jewel House, home to the Crown Jewels. Fans of Britain's Royal Family will want to visit Buckingham Palace, London's Royal home since Queen Victoria's reign. Here, you can enjoy the colorful pomp of the Changing of the Guard or even take a tour of the Palace's State Rooms (be sure to book in advance as they're only open for a few weeks each year). The city's Whitehall Road area is another must, where you'll find Big Ben and the Parliament Buildings, as well as Westminster Abbey, scene of many a royal wedding. Another area to visit is South Kensington, home to the city's best museums, including the Victoria and Albert Museum and the Natural History Museum, as well as the famous Harrods department store. Also check out Trafalgar Square, home to Nelson's Column and the National Portrait Gallery.

Stonehenge, 10 miles north of Salisbury on Salisbury Plain, is Europe's best-known prehistoric monument (the site is so popular that visitors need to purchase a timed ticket in advance to guarantee entry). Exhibitions at the excellent visitor center set the stage for a visit, explaining through audio-visual experiences and more than 250 ancient objects how the megaliths were erected and telling about life when they were placed here, between 3000 and 1500 BC. After walking around the enormous stones, visit the authentic replicas of Neolithic Houses to see

the tools and implements of everyday Neolithic life as volunteers demonstrate skills from 4,500 years ago. Although you can't go inside the circle to wander among the stones during normal opening hours, you can reserve special early morning or late evening access into the circle through English Heritage, which manages the site.

Tower of London

Prison, palace, treasure vault, observatory, and menagerie - the Tower of London has done it all. Widely considered the most important building in England, there's enough to see and do at this World Heritage Site to keep visitors busy for hours. The centerpiece is the White Tower. Built in 1078 by William the Conqueror, it's home to amazing exhibits such as Line of Kings, the world's oldest visitor attraction (1652) with its remarkable displays of royal armor. Other highlights include the wonderful Crown Jewels exhibition, classic Yeoman Warder Tours, the Royal Mint, and exhibits and displays regarding prisoners and executions. All told, the Tower of London covers some 18 acres, so there's a great deal of exploring to do.

The University Towns of Cambridge & Oxford

The UK has long been a center of learning, with two of its most famous university towns also ranking highly as tourist destinations. An easy commute north of London - and just 128 kilometers apart - Cambridge and Oxford have for centuries been rivals for the title of the country's top academic establishments, a rivalry that's celebrated during the famous rowing event, The Boat Race, which takes place each spring on the River Thames. Despite the good-spirited rivalry, each location offers plenty of attractions. Highlights of a visit to Cambridge include the chance to wander the UK's largest collection of preserved historic buildings, many of them located within an easy walk of Cambridge University's 31 colleges, the oldest of which was founded in 1284. In addition to touring the stunning college grounds (only a handful of the university's buildings offer tours), visitors to Cambridge should also take a punt along the River Cam as well as explore the old town center. Oxford University's 38 colleges are equally attractive, each set around a quadrangle and several inner courtyards along with chapels, dining-halls, libraries, and student accommodations (some offer unique tourist accommodation packages, too). Oxford highlights include the Carfax Tower, with its fine views over the city center, and the many fine old buildings of the town's High Street.

Loch Ness and Inverness

Despite the fact that the legends of mythical monsters have largely been debunked (just don't tell the locals), spectacular Loch Ness remains an extremely popular tourist attraction for travelers heading to Scotland. While it's unlikely you'll encounter any monsters, you will, however, be rewarded with seeing some of the UK's most beautiful scenery. Highlights include the ruins of Urquhart Castle, overlooking the loch, one of Scotland's largest fortifications. The current structure dates from the 14th century. For those wanting to learn about the area's many legends, the Loch Ness Centre and Exhibition recounts its history, along

with that of its monster, including details of ongoing searches for the elusive creature. A little further north is Inverness, which boasts numerous excellent attractions, including Inverness Castle, the Inverness Museum and Art Gallery, and the late 19th-century St. Andrew's Cathedral. History buffs should also check out the Culloden Battlefield and Visitors Centre. It was in Culloden in 1746 that the English and Scots fought their last battle and where the fate of Scotland as a British dominion was determined. Also of interest are the gravestones of warriors from the Scottish clans, as well as the six-meter-high Memorial Cairn erected in 1881 to commemorate the battle.

Theme 8. Scientific progress in the UK

Science and technology in the United Kingdom has a long history, producing many important figures and developments in the field. Major theorists from the UK include Isaac Newton whose laws of motion and illumination of gravity have been seen as a keystone of modern science and Charles Darwin whose theory of evolution by natural selection was fundamental to the development of modern biology. Major scientific discoveries include hydrogen by Henry Cavendish, penicillin by Alexander Fleming, and the structure of DNA, by Francis Crick and others. Major engineering projects and applications pursued by people from the UK include the steam locomotive developed by Richard Trevithick and Andrew Vivian, the jet engine by Frank Whittle and the World Wide Web by Tim Berners-Lee. The UK continues to play a major role in the development of science and technology and major technological sectors include the aerospace, motor and pharmaceutical industries.

England and Scotland were leading centres of the Scientific Revolution from the 17th centuryand the United Kingdom led the Industrial Revolution from the 18th century,and has continued to produce scientists and engineers credited with important advances.Some of the major theories, discoveries and applications advanced by people from the UK are given below.

The development of empiricism and its role in scientific method, by Francis Bacon (1561 – 1626).

The laws of motion and illumination of gravity, by physicist, mathematician, astronomer, natural philosopher, alchemist and theologian, Sir Isaac Newton (1643–1727).

The discovery of hydrogen, by Henry Cavendish (1731–1810).

The steam locomotive, by Richard Trevithick (1771–1833) and Andrew Vivian (1759–1842).

An early electric motor, by Michael Faraday (1771–1867), who largely made electricity viable for use in technology.

The theory of aerodynamics, by Sir George Cayley (1773–1857).

The first public steam railway, by George Stephenson (1781–1848).

The first commercial electrical telegraph, co-invented by Sir William Fothergill Cooke (1806–79) and Charles Wheatstone (1802–75).

First tunnel under a navigable river, first all iron ship and first railway to run express services, contributed to by Isambard Kingdom Brunel (1806–59).

Evolution by natural selection, by Charles Darwin (1809–82).

The invention of the incandescent light bulb, by Joseph Swan (1826–1914).

The unification of electromagnetism, by James Clerk Maxwell (1831–79).

The first practical telephone, patented by Alexander Graham Bell (1847–1922).

The discovery of penicillin, by biologist and pharmacologist, Sir Alexander Fleming (1881–1955).

The world's first working television system, and colour television, by John Logie Baird (1888–1946).

The first meaningful synthesis of quantum mechanics with special relativity by Paul Dirac (1902–84) in the equation named after him, and his subsequent prediction of antimatter.

The invention of the jet engine, by Frank Whittle (1907–96).

The invention of the hovercraft, by Christopher Cockerell (1910–99).

The colossus computer, by Alan Turing (1912–54), an early digital computer (a code breaker in WWII made in Bletchley Park).

The structure of DNA, by Francis Crick (1916–2004) and others.

The theoretical breakthrough of the Higgs mechanism to explain electroweak symmetry breaking and why some particles have mass, by Peter Higgs (1929–).

Theories in cosmology, quantum gravity and black holes, by Stephen Hawking (1942–2018).

The invention of the World Wide Web, by Tim Berners-Lee (1955–).

Technology-based industries

The UK plays a leading part in the aerospace industry, with companies including Rolls-Royce playing a leading role in the aero-engine market; BAE Systems acting as Britain's largest and the Pentagon's sixth largest defence supplier, and large companies including GKN acting as major suppliers to the Airbus project.Two British-based companies, GlaxoSmithKline and AstraZeneca, ranked in the top five pharmaceutical companies in the world by sales in 2009 and UK companies have discovered and developed more leading medicines than any other country apart from the US.The UK remains a leading centre of automotive design and production, particularly of engines, and has around 2,600 component manufacturers. Investment by venture capital firms in UK technology companies was $9.7 billion from 2010–2015

Scientific research

Scientific research and development remains important in British universities, with many establishing science parks to facilitate production and co-operation with industry. Between 2004 and 2012 the UK produced 6% of the world's scientific research papers and had an 8% share of scientific citations, the

third- and second-highest in the world (after the United States' 9% and China's 7% respectively).Scientific journals produced in the UK include Nature, the British Medical Journal and The Lancet.

Britain was one of the largest recipients of research funding from the European Union. From 2007-13, the UK received €8.8 billion out of a total of €107 billion expenditure on research, development and innovation in EU Member States, associated and third countries. At the time, this represented the fourth largest share in the EU. The European Research Council granted 79 projects funding in the UK in 2017, more than any other EU country

Theme 9. Customs and traditions of the UK

Customs and traditions in the UK

Every nation and every country has its own customs and traditions. Britain is different from our own country. This is natural. In Britain traditions play a more important part in the life of the people than in other countries. Englishmen are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up.

It has been the law for about 300 years that all the theatres are closed on Sundays. No letters are delivered; only a few Sunday papers are published. Foreigners coming to Britain are stuck at once by quite a number of customs and pecularities in the English life.

The 6 ravens have been kept in the Tower of London now for enturies. They used to come in from Essex for food cracks when the Tower was used as a palace. Over the years people thought that if the ravens ever left the Tower, the Monarchy would fall. So Charles II decreed that 6 ravens should always be keot in the Tower and should be paid a wage from the tresury. Sometimes they live as long as 25 years, but thrit wings are clipped, so they can’t fly away, and when araven dies another raven brought from Essex.

Some ceremonies are traditional, such as a Changing of the Guard at Buckingham Palace, Trooping the Colour, the State Opening of Parlament. The Ceremony of Trooping the Colour is one of the most fascinating. It is staged in front of Buckingham Palace. It is held annually on the monarch’s official birthday which was the second Saturday in June. Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II was Colonel-in-Chief of the Life Guards. She was escorted by Horse Guards riding to the Parade. The ceremeny is accompanied by the music of bands. The processionis is headed by the Queen.

In England the Queen opens the parlament once a year, she goes to the Houses of Parlament in the golden coach, she wears the crown jewels. She opens the Parlament with a speech in the House of Lords. The cavalrymen wear red uiforms, shining helmets, long black boots and long white gloves. These men are Life Guards.

In the House of Lords, Chancellor sits on the sack of wool. This tradition comes from the old times when sheep wool made England rich and powerful.

In the House of Commons there are two rows benches: one row is for the government and the other one is for the opposition. The benches are divided by a strip of carpet, which is also a tradition from old days, when that division prevented the two parties from fighting during the debates.

The englishmen have love for old things. They prefer houses with a fireplace and a garden to a flat, modern houses with central heating. The houses are traditionally not very high. They are usually two-storied. British buses are double-decked and red, mail-boxes are yellow, the cars keep to the left isde of road-all these are traditions.

Most English love garden in front of the house is a little square covered with cement painted green in imitation of grass and a box of flowers. They love flowers very much.

The English people love animals very much, too. Sometimes thire pets have a far better life in Britain than anywhere else. In Britain they usually buy things for thire pets in pet-shops. In recent years they bagan to show love for more "exotic" animals, such as crocodiles, elephants, and so on.

Queuing is normal in Britain, when they are waiting for bus, waitng to be served in a shop. People will become very angry, and even rude, if you "jump" the queue.

Traditionally telephone boxes, letter boxes and double-decker buses are red.

Old customs and traditions may seem atrange to visitors but the English still keep them up, which mix with everyday life in the streets.

II Holidays in Great Britain

There are 8 public holidays or bank holidays in a year in Great Britain, that are days on which people need not to go in to work. They are Christmas Day, Boxing Day, New Year's Day, Good Friday, Easter Monday, May day, Spring Bank Holiday and Late Summer Bank Holiday. The term "bank holiday" dates back to the 19th century when in 1871 and 1875 most of these days where constituted bank holidays, when banks were to be closed.

All the public holidays, except Christmas (25 December) and Boxing Day (26 December) do not fall on the same date each year. Most of these holidays are of religious origin, though for the greater part of the population they have lost their religious significance and are simply days on which people relax, eat, drink and make marry.

Christmas Day – is a probably the most exciting day of the year for most children. English children enjoy receiving presents which are tradiioally put into the stocking, and have the pleasure of giving presents. Most houses are decorated with coloured paper or holly, and there is usually Christmas tree in the corn of the front room. Christmas is usually time to be with family, to feast and to merry.

The traditional Christmas Dinner includes roastes turkey or goose accompanied by potatoes, peas and carrots, pudding – usually a coin or two will have been hidden inside it, and a part of the fun is to see who finds it.

An essential part of Christmas is carol singing. No church or school is without its carol service.

December 26 is called the Boxing Day. It takes its names from the old custom of giving workers an annual present in christmas box. Today it is the day to visit friends, go for a drive or a long walk or just sit around recovering from too much food. In the country there are usually Boxing Day Meets (hunts-fox-hunting). In the big cities and towns, tradition on that day demands a visit to the pantomime. One of the more familiar pantomimes recalls the adventures of Dick Wittington (and his cat) who lived 600 years ago. He became London's chief citizen, holding office as Mayor 3 times. Other popular pantomime characters are: Robinson Crusoe, Cinderella, Peter Pan, Red-Riding-Hood and Puss in the Boots.

New Year in England is not so enthusiastically observed as Christmas. The most common type of celebration is a family party. At midnight everyone hear the chimes of Big Ben and a toast is drunk to the New Year. The most famous celebration are in London in trafalgar Square where there is a big Christmas tree (an annual present from Norway), a big crowd is ususlly gathered and someone usually falls into the fountain.

Another popular public holiday is Easter which comes in spring at different time each year (March or April). The world "Easter" owes its name and many of its customs to a pagn festival called "eostre" which is the name of the Anglo-Saxon goddess of spring-time. In England it's time for the giving and receiving of presents: Easter chocolate eggs – (an egg signifies the Nature's reawakening) – and hot buns. Traditionally, chicken eggs are hard-boiled and dyed various colours and hidden around for children to find. Kids are also given eggs to roll down hillsides and the one whose egg remains whole and intact is declared the winner. Carnivals and merry-making parades are held in many places on the day before Lent. Passion Plays dramatising the Easter story are enacted widely in England. Many families have their Easter feast blessed by the priest by either taking their food to the church or by having the priest come home. Pretzels, a kind of bread, with their interlocked shapes, remind us of arms crossed in prayer and the now famous Hot-cross buns were first made in England for Godd Friday. There is a popular belief that wearing 3 new things on Easter will bring good luck.

There is also May Day, people choose the Queen of May, erect maypoles around which people dance. The Summer Bank Holiday usually comes on the end of August. It's an occasion for big sport meetings – mainly all kinds of athletics. Thre are also horse race meeting all over the country; there are large fairs with swings, roundabouts, coconut shies, bingo ang other games.

Theme 10. Sports and Recreation of the UK

Sports and recreation

The global spread of sports that had their origins in Britain was central to the development of modern sports in the 18th and 19th centuries and is one of the British Empire's important cultural legacies. The modern game of football (soccer) is generally accepted to have originated in England. The Football Association, the game's first organization, was founded in England in 1863, and the first football

match played between England and Scotland—the oldest rivalry in the sport—was at Glasgow in 1872. English football fans can follow three national divisions and the celebrated premiership, which includes such legendary clubs as Manchester United, Arsenal, and Liverpool FC. Scotland has three national divisions as well and a premiership that features the Celtic and Rangers clubs of Glasgow; Wales and Northern Ireland also have national leagues. The Scottish and English national teams regularly appear in international competitions. In 1966 England hosted and won the World Cup; it was the third host nation to win the championship.

Rugby and cricket have also long enjoyed great popularity in Britain. According to tradition, rugby began in 1823 at Rugby School in England. In 1871 the Rugby Football Union was formed as the English governing body, and the rival Rugby Football League was founded in 1895. England, Scotland, and Wales all have club competitions in both union and league versions of the game. The three also send national teams to the Six Nations Championship and to World Cup tournaments. Cricket's origins may date to 13th-century England, and county competition in England was formally organized in the 19th century. International matches, known as tests, began in 1877 with a match between England and Australia.

Great Britain has attended every modern Olympic Games, beginning with the first competition in Athens, Greece, in 1896. Britain has hosted the Games three times in London, in 1908, 1948, and 2012. At the 1896 Games weight lifter Launceston Elliot was the first Briton to win a gold medal, and in 1908 figure skater Madge Cave Syers became the first female athlete to win a medal in the Winter Games. British athletes have won hundreds of medals over the years, making especially strong showings in athletics, tennis, rowing, yachting, and figure skating. Several British athletes have put forth memorable performances in track-and-field events, including sprinter Harold Abrahams in the 1920s, middle-distance runners Sebastian Coe and Steve Ovett, and two-time decathlon gold medalist Daley Thompson in the 1970s and '80s. At the 2000 Summer Games rower Steve Redgrave accomplished the rare feat of earning gold medals in five consecutive Games. At the 2012 Games in London, athletes representing the United Kingdom claimed 65 medals.

Britain is home to several important international sports competitions. The Open Championship—also known, outside of Britain, as the British Open—is a golf tournament held annually, often at the world-renowned course at St. Andrews in Scotland. The All-England (Wimbledon) Championships is one of the world's leading tennis competitions. Celebrated horse-racing events include the Royal Ascot, the Derby, and the Grand National steeplechase. The Henley Royal Regatta is the world's premiere rowing championship.

Although the United Kingdom's climate often rewards staying indoors, the British are enthusiasts of outdoor leisure activities and are well served by an extensive network of hiking and bicycling paths, national parks, and other amenities. Especially popular are the Lake District, which preserves a scenic area commemorated in many works by English poets; the rugged Scottish Highlands

and Inner Hebrides islands; and the mountainous Welsh region of Snowdonia National Park, a magnet for climbers from around the world.

Media and publishing

The communications media—press, publishing, broadcasting, and entertainment—reach audiences ranging from the millions for television, radio, and national newspapers to small minorities for local papers, specialist periodicals, or experimental theatre and film. In addition to their presence in print, most newspapers disseminate information through the Internet, to which access grew rapidly during the late 1990s. By the early 21st century about one-third of all households had personal computers with access to the Internet.

Newspapers

In both sales and reputation the national papers published in London dominate. Within the national newspaper business in the United Kingdom, a distinction has developed between popular papers (often tabloids) with multimillion circulation and quality broadsheet papers with relatively small sales. Four "populars" account for about five-sixths of the total morning paper circulation. Generally, British newspapers are not formally tied to specific political parties. However, most display clear political sympathies that are usually determined by their proprietors. The tabloid Daily Mail and the broadsheet The Daily Telegraph have consistently supported the Conservative Party, while the tabloid The Daily Mirror and the broadsheet The Guardian (published in both London and Manchester) have normally supported Labour. The Times of London is one of the world's oldest newspapers. The United Kingdom's biggest-selling newspaper, The Sun—whose popularity since it was bought by Rupert Murdoch's News International company in 1969 has stemmed from a diet of sensational personality-based news stories, show-business gossip, lively sports reporting, and pictures of scantily dressed young women—supported Labour in the early 1970s, switched to the Conservative Party under Margaret Thatcher in 1979, and switched back again to Labour in the late 1990s. In England there are also several regional dailies and weeklies and national weeklies—some targeting particular ethnic communities.

The Welsh press includes several daily papers (e.g., the Western Mail and the South Wales Echo) as well as a number of weekly English-language, bilingual, or Welsh-language newspapers. Scotland has national daily newspapers based in Edinburgh and Glasgow with wide circulation (e.g., The Scotsman, the Daily Record, and The Herald) and a number of regional weeklies as well. Northern Ireland's daily papers (e.g., the Belfast Telegraph and The Irish News) are all published in Belfast. There is a large periodical press in the United Kingdom that ranges from such traditional publications as The Economist, The Spectator, and New Statesman to more specialized and, often, more mercurial journals.

Broadcasting

The BBC, which had been established as an independent public corporation in 1927, held a monopoly of both radio and television broadcasting until 1954, when the Independent Television Authority (ITA) was established to provide the facilities for commercial television companies. The ITA's successor today is the

Office of Communications (Ofcom). Created by the Communications Act of 2003, Ofcom is responsible for regulating all commercial radio and television services, including satellite and cable, as well as all wired, wireless, and broadband telecommunications. Commercial television broadcasters include Channel Four and the ITV network. Almost every household receives the terrestrial television channels, and by the early 21st century about one in four households also could receive several dozen additional channels by satellite or cable. The satellite and cable market is dominated by Sky PLC (formerly BSkyB), which is partly owned by Murdoch's News International. Sky, which serves Austria, Germany, Ireland, and Italy as well as the United Kingdom, also operates a 24-hour news channel and several sports channels.

A new 11-year charter for the BBC was enacted in 2016. Under it the BBC continues to draw its revenue from license fees (on a scale fixed by the government) from persons owning television sets. Its governance, however, shifted from the external BBC Trust and internal BBC Executive to a new "unitary board," the majority of whose members are appointed by the BBC. The board also includes members nominated by the government whose involvement guarantees that the individual interests of England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are represented. Whereas regulation of the BBC was formerly provided by the BBC Trust, that responsibility now falls to Ofcom and its governing board, which also license and regulate commercial television companies, which earn revenue by selling advertising time and (in the case of some satellite and cable companies) subscription and pay-per-view channels. The BBC operates two terrestrial television channels, and Ofcom operates three. On its second television channel, the BBC tends to offer programs of above-average intellectual and cultural interest—competition that the Channel Four commercial channel meets with its own cultural programs. The BBC also provides a 24-hour news service and a channel devoted to live proceedings of Parliament to people able to receive satellite, cable, or digital television services. In addition, BBC Radio operates a comprehensive external service, broadcasting around the world in more than 40 languages, as well as a world service in English 24 hours a day.

Both the BBC and terrestrial commercial channels supply educational programs for schools and for adult studies. The Open University, offering degree courses to people who lack formal academic qualifications, uses educational programs that are broadcast by the BBC; these programs are backed by correspondence courses

The BBC and Ofcom are public bodies that in the last resort can be controlled by the government, and Parliament can alter the terms of their authority. The government has the statutory power to veto a broadcast, but only rarely does it interfere with the day-to-day management of the BBC or Ofcom. There are more than 30 BBC local radio stations and more than 200 commercial local radio stations serving the United Kingdom.

For a more-detailed discussion of cultural life in England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland, see the cultural life sections of the articles England, Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland.

History

This discussion encompasses the history of England and Great Britain. Histories of the other three constituent parts of the United Kingdom can be found in Northern Ireland, Scotland, and Wales.

Theme 11. History of the USA (formation of the country)

The first colonies in North America

The first Europeans to establish colonies in North America were the Spanish. In 1526 a Spaniard called Lucas Vazquez de Ayllon attempted to found a colony in Carolina. (He also brought the first black slaves to North America). However the attempt failed. Many Spaniards died of disease and the survivors abandoned the colony. In 1565 Pedro Menendez de Aviles founded a settlement at St Augustine, Florida, the first permanent European settlement in what is now the USA.

The first English attempt to colonize North America was made by a man named Sir Humphrey Gilbert. In 1578 Queen Elizabeth granted him permission to establish a colony there. In 1583 Gilbert sailed with a small fleet of ships to Newfoundland. However Gilbert soon abandoned the venture. Gilbert was lost on the voyage home. However his half-brother, Walter Raleigh made another attempt to found a colony. In 1584 he sent two ships to explore the coast. They found what they thought was a suitable place for a colony. In January 1585 Queen Elizabeth the 'Virgin Queen' allowed him to call the place Virginia, after her. In April 1585 an expedition was sent led by Richard Grenville. They arrived in July 1585. Grenville left men on Roanoke Island then left for England to obtain more men and supplies. However while he was gone the colonists ran very short of supplies. In 1586 the colonists abandoned Virginia and returned to England.

In 1587 another attempt to found a colony was made by a man named John White. He led an expedition of men, women and children to Virginia. However White returned to England to seek more support for the colony. Because of a war between England and Spain he was unable to return to Virginia until 1590. When he did he found the colony deserted. The fate of the colonists is unknown.

Jamestown And Virginia

The first attempts to found a colony in North America were made by gentlemen adventurers. Success came only when a group of men joined together and pooled their resources to found a colony. The Virginia Company was founded in 1606. They sent two expeditions to North America. Raleigh Gilbert (Sir Humphrey Gilbert's son) led one of them. They landed in Maine but soon gave up. They returned to England in 1609. The second expedition founded Jamestown on 14 May 1607.

More settlers arrived in 1609. However shortage of food, disease and conflict with the natives caused many deaths among the colonists. In 1610 the survivors were on the verge of leaving. They were dissuaded from doing so only when more ships from England arrived. In 1611 Sir Thomas Dale became the Governor of the colony. He introduced strict discipline with a code of laws called 'Laws, Divine, Moral and Martial'. Penalties for disobedience were severe.

In 1612 a man named John Rolfe began growing tobacco. In 1614 the first Virginian tobacco was sold in England. Exports of tobacco soon became the mainstay of the Virginian economy.

Gradually the colony expanded. In 1618 the Company offered 50 acres of land to anyone who could pay for the cost of their voyage across the Atlantic. If they could not pay they could become indentured servants. When they arrived they were not free. They had to work for the company for several years to pay back the cost of their passage. In 1619 the first slaves arrived in Virginia. Also in 1619 the first representative government in North America was created when the House of Burgesses met.

In 1624 the Virginia Company was dissolved and the Crown took over the colony. By 1660 the population of Virginia was 27,000. By 1710 it had risen to 78,000. However in 1699 the seat of government of Virginia was moved from Jamestown to Middle Plantation (Williamsburg). Afterwards Jamestown went into decline.

The Pilgrim Fathers And New England

Another English colony was founded 1620. In England people called Separatists were strongly critical of the Church of England and they did not wish to belong to it. They faced persecution in England so in 1608 a group of them fled to Holland where they were allowed to practice their religion. However they grew dissatisfied there and a London joint stock company agreed to finance a voyage across the Atlantic. The colonists set out in a ship called the Mayflower and they arrived at Plymouth in December 1620. Many of the colonists did not survive the first winter. However a Native American taught them how to grow crops. Another colony was founded at Salem in 1628.

The Massachusetts Bay Company was formed in 1629. From 1630 large numbers of settlers were transported to New England and its population swelled. Furthermore English colonists spread over the coast of North America. In 1634 people from Massachusetts founded the town of Wethersfield in Connecticut. In 1636 a group of people left the Massachusetts Bay colony and settled on Rhode Island. The first settlement was at Providence.

Meanwhile a fishing settlement was founded in New Hampshire in 1623. In 1629 the area between the Merrimack River and the Piscataqua River was granted to a man named Mason. It was named New Hampshire. Portsmouth, New Hampshire was founded in 1630. Officially New Hampshire was part of Massachusetts until 1679.

Unlike the southern states, which were overwhelmingly agricultural New England developed a partly mercantile economy. Fishing was an important

industry. Exports of timber and barrels were also important. There was also a ship building industry in New England.

Life in 17th Century New England

The Europeans introduced many diseases to which the natives had little or no resistance. As a result many natives died and their number declined sharply. As the British colonies grew they inevitably came into conflict with the natives. The Pequot War was fought in 1637-1638 and it ended in the destruction of the Pequot tribe. Another desperate struggle took place in 1675-1676. The colonists heavy-handed treatment of the natives led to King Philip's War. King Philip was actually a native called Metacom and the war ended with his death. Although great damage was done on both sides the defeat of the natives effectively meant that the colonists now had mastery of New England.In 1692 twenty people died as a result of the Salem Witch Trials.

New York and New Jersey

In 1624 the Dutch West India Company founded a colony called New Netherland. The first settlement was at Fort Orange (Albany). In 1638 Swedes formed a colony at Fort Christina (Wilmington). The Dutch captured this colony in 1655 and made it part of New Netherland. The British captured New Netherland in 1664 and renamed it New York in honor of the king's brother the Duke of York. King Charles II granted the colony to his brother. He in turn granted the land between the Delaware and the Hudson to two men, Lord John Berkeley (1607-1678) and Sir George Carteret (1615-1680). Carteret came from the island of Jersey in the English Channel and he named the area New Jersey after his home. In 1676 the colony was divided into East and West Jersey. Carteret took East Jersey. In 1681 his widow sold it to William Penn and 11 other Quakers. Penn hoped to turn this new colony into a haven of religious tolerance for Quakers and others. In 1682 the area now called Delaware was ceded to William Penn. In 1704 it was allowed its own assembly. However until the revolution Delaware and Pennsylvania shared a governor. Meanwhile East and West Jersey were reunited in 1702.

The Great awakening

In the mid 18th century there was a great religious revival in the North American colonies. (Later it was given the name 'The Great Awakening'). Leading figures in the revival were William Tennent 1673-1745, a Scottish-Presbyterian preacher, Jonathan Edwards 1703-1758. The English preacher George Whitefield 1714-1770 also visited the colonies and won many converts.

Conflict with Britain

As the North American colonies grew tension with Britain was inevitable. The British felt that the colonies existed for the benefit of the mother country and this attitude was bound to cause resentment. As early as 1651 the British Parliament passed a navigation act. It stated that any goods grown or made outside Europe must be transported to England in English ships. Other Navigation Acts followed it. The 1660 Navigation Act stated that certain goods (cotton, indigo, sugar and tobacco) could only be exported from the colonies to England or to other

colonies. It was followed by acts in 1670 and 1673. However the British made little attempt to enforce these acts and they were widely ignored by the colonists. (After 1763 the British tried to enforce them more rigorously, causing great resentment among the colonists).

In the early 18th century the population of the North American colonies grew rapidly. It was probably about 300,000 at the end of the 17th century but by 1760 it was over 1 million. By 1780 it had doubled. In the early 18th century the population was boosted by immigrants from Northern Ireland (most of them descended from Scottish Presbyterians). There were also many immigrants from Scotland itself. Also in the early 18th century there were many German immigrants. Land was cheap in North America and it attracted many people hoping for a better life.

The great proclamation

However relations between the colonists and the mother country turned sour after 1763. The British had just finished fighting the Seven Years War against France. They had won Canada but the war was very expensive. The British were keen to prevent any wars with the Native Americans, which might prove expensive. In 1763 a royal proclamation known as the Great Proclamation sought to ban any further westward expansion. It forbade people to settle in 'any lands beyond the heads or sources of any of the rivers which fall into the Atlantic Ocean from the West or Northwest'. This proclamation was ignored by the colonists but it also caused great resentment. The colonists objected to being told by the British government that they could not expand westwards.

The American Revolutionary War

At first sight the British had many advantages. They greatly outnumbered the Americans and had much greater resources. However they were handicapped by long lines of communication. (In those days it took a sailing ship 6 to 8 weeks to cross the Atlantic). The British won the battle of Long Island in August 1776 and in September 1776 they captured New York. Washington was forced to retreat. However Washington won victories at Trenton in December 1776 and at Princeton in January 1777. The Americans were defeated at Brandywine in September 1777 but they won a decisive victory at Saratoga in October. A British force led by Burgoyne marched south from Canada but was surrounded and forced to surrender.

Saratoga convinced the French that the Americans might win the war. As a result they declared war on Britain, their traditional enemy in 1778. French naval activity in the Atlantic made it even harder for the British to supply their forces in America. Spain declared war on Britain in 1779.

Furthermore the Americans won victories at Kings Mountain in October 1780 and at Cowpens in January 1781. Cornwallis, the British Commander, unwisely concentrated his forces on the coast at Yorktown, Virginia. However the French navy blockaded him while the Americans besieged him from the land. The British were forced to surrender. Yorktown was a catastrophic defeat for the British and ended any hope of them ending the war. Nevertheless it continued for 2 more years before the Treaty of Paris ended it in September 1783.

Life in 18th Century Colonial America

The Foundation Of The United States Of America

In 1777 Articles of Confederation were drawn up which joined the states into a loose federation. They were adopted in 1781. However the arrangement proved unsatisfactory. In 1787 each state sent delegates to a convention in Philadelphia to remedy this. Between May and September 1787 they wrote a new constitution. The first Congress met in 1789 and George Washington became the first President. In 1791 ten amendments, known as the Bill of Rights were ratified.

In the late 18th century and the early 19th century the population of the USA grew rapidly. Immigrants from Europe poured into the country including many from Germany. Meanwhile the USA expanded westward. In 1791 Vermont was admitted to the union as the 14th state. Kentucky became the 15th state in 1792 and Tennessee the 16th in 1796. In 1803 Ohio became the 17th state.

The War Of 1812

Meanwhile the Americans and British fought another war. This war came about partly because, after 1807, the British navy blockaded European ports during the war with Napoleon and they prevented American ships from delivering their cargoes. They also boarded American ships looking for deserters. Some of the men they arrested were not deserters at all. Finally some Americans wished to invade Canadian territory. War was declared on 18 June 1812. The senators voted 19 to 13 for war. However not all Americans actively supported the war. Some were, at best, lukewarm in their support. This dissension weakened the American war effort. On the other hand American sailors were all volunteers while many sailors in the British navy were forced to join by press gangs. Volunteers were, generally, better than pressed men, one reason why America did well in naval battles.

However an American attempt to invade Canada failed. However the American navy had more success. They won a victory on Lake Erie in September 1813. However Napoleon abdicated in April 1814 allowing the British to send more forces to North America. In August 1814 a British expedition landed and captured Washington. They withdrew after a few weeks. A peace treaty was signed at the end of 1814. However a major battle was fought after it was signed. The British were severely defeated at the Battle of New Orleans on 8 January 1815.

The Growth Of The USA

In 1804 Meriwether Lewis and William Clark set out to explore what is now the northwest United States. In 1805 they followed the Missouri River to its headwaters then crossed the Rocky Mountains and reached the Pacific. They returned in 1806.

By 1810 the population of the USA was over 7.2 million and it continued to grow rapidly. By 1820 it was over 9.6 million and by 1840 over 17 million. More and more states were added to union. Indiana was admitted in 1816. Mississippi followed in 1817. Illinois became a state in 1818 and Alabama in 1819. Missouri became a state in 1821. It was followed by Arkansas in 1836 and Michigan in 1837.

The American economy also grew rapidly. In the south cotton expanded rapidly after Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin in 1793. It also grew because

Britain was industrializing. There was a huge cotton industry in Britain in the early 19th century, which devoured cotton from America. In the North trade and commerce grew rapidly. By 1860 more than 60% of the world's cotton was grown in the USA. In the decades after the war of 1812 the Northern States began to industrialize. Coal mining and manufacturing industries boomed. In 1817 the New York legislature authorized a canal from the Hudson River to Lake Erie. The canal was completed in 1825 and it cut the cost of transporting freight. Furthermore the first railroad was built in the USA was built in 1828.

After 1814 there was fighting between Seminole Indians from Florida and settlers from Georgia. The Seminoles also allowed runaway slaves to live among them, which annoyed the Americans. Eventually, in 1818 Andrew Jackson led a force into Florida (although it was Spanish territory). This was the first Seminole War. Spain ceded Florida to the USA in 1821. Florida became a US state in 1845.

Theme 12. The Presidents Of The USA

The President of the United States (POTUS)is the head of state and head of government of the United States of America. The president directs the executive branch of the federal government and is the commander-in-chief of the United States Armed Forces.

In contemporary times, the president is looked upon as one of the world's most powerful political figures and as the leader of the only remaining global superpower. The role includes responsibility for the world's most expensive military, which has the second largest nuclear arsenal. The president also leads the nation with the largest economy by nominal GDP. The president possesses significant domestic and international hard and soft power.

Article II of the Constitution establishes the executive branch of the federal government. It vests the executive power of the United States in the president. The power includes the execution and enforcement of federal law, alongside the responsibility of appointing federal executive, diplomatic, regulatory and judicial officers, and concluding treaties with foreign powers with the advice and consentof the Senate. The president is further empowered to grant federal pardons and reprieves, and to convene and adjourn either or both houses of Congress under extraordinary circumstances. The president directs the foreign and domestic policies of the United States, and takes an active role in promoting his policy priorities to members of Congress.In addition, as part of the system of checks and balances, Article I, Section 7 of the Constitution gives the president the power to sign or veto federal legislation. The power of the presidency has grown substantially since its formation, as has the power of the federal government as a whole.

Through the Electoral College, registered voters indirectly elect the president and vice president to a four-year term. This is the only federal election in the United States which is not decided by popular vote. Nine vice presidents became president by virtue of a president's intra-term death or resignation.

Article II sets three qualifications for holding the presidency: natural-born U.S. citizenship; at least thirty-five years of age; and residency in the United States for at least fourteen years. The Twenty-second Amendmentprecludes any person from being elected president to a third term. In all, 44 individuals have served 45 presidencies spanning 57 full four-year terms.Grover Cleveland served two non-consecutive terms, so he is counted twice; as both the 22nd and 24th president. Donald Trump of New York is the 45th and current president. He assumed officeon January 20, 2017.

George Washington created history when he became the first President of the United States after the nation's independence from British colonial. One of the Founding Fathers of the United States he was much admired for his strong leadership qualities. Thomas Jefferson, principal author of the Declaration of Independence, is consistently ranked as one of the most successful U.S. **Presidents** by historians. Abraham Lincoln, another highly ranked U.S. President, led the nation through its Civil War, abolished slavery, modernized the economy and strengthened the federal government. Theodore Roosevelt, who came to presidency at age 42, following the assassination of President McKinley in September 1901 became the youngest U.S. President in history. A highly respected leader of the nation, he was also the recipient of the 1906 Nobel Peace Prize. Warren Harding, one of the most popular presidents in history at the time of his death, later came to be rated among the worst in the historical rankings of the U.S. presidents. Franklin D. Roosevelt, John F. Kennedy, Ronald Reagan, and George H. W. Bush are among the 20th century American Presidents. Barack Obama, who became the president in 2009 is the first African American to hold the office. This section provides you information about the life and works of American presidents.

Top 10 Most Influential U.S. Presidents

01

Abraham Lincoln

If not for Abraham Lincoln (March 4, 1861 – April 15, 1865), who presided during the American Civil War, the U.S. might look very different today. Lincoln guided the Union through four bloody years of conflict, abolished slavery with the Emancipation Proclamation, and at war's end laid the foundation for reconciliation with the defeated South. Sadly, Lincoln did not live to see a fully reunited nation. He was assassinated by John Wilkes Booth in Washington D.C, weeks before the Civil War officially concluded.

02

Franklin Delano Roosevelt

Franklin Roosevelt (March 4, 1933 – April 12, 1945) is the nation's longest-serving president. Elected during the depths of the Great Depression, he held office until his death in 1945, just months before the end of World War II. During his tenure, the role of the federal government was greatly expanded into the bureaucracy it is today. Depression-era federal programs like Social Security still exist, providing basic financial protections for the nation's most vulnerable. As a

result of the war, the United States also assumed a prominent new role in global affairs, a position it still occupies.

03

George Washington

Known as the father of the nation, George Washington (April 30, 1789 – March 4, 1797) was the first president of the U.S. He served as commander in chief during the American Revolution and afterward presided over the Constitutional Convention of 1787. With no precedent for selecting a president, it fell to the members of the Electoral College to choose the nation's first leader two years later. Washington was that man.

Over the course of two terms, he established many of the traditions of the office still observes today. Deeply concerned that the office of president not be seen as that of a monarch, but as one of the people, Washington insisted he be called "Mr. President," rather than "your excellency." During his tenure, the U.S. established rules for federal spending, normalized relations with its former enemy Great Britain, and laid the groundwork for the future capital of Washington, D.C.

04

Thomas Jefferson

Thomas Jefferson (March 4, 1801 – March 4, 1809) also played an outsized role in America's birth. He drafted the Declaration of Independence and served as the nation's first secretary of state. As president, he organized the Louisiana Purchase, which doubled the size of the United States and set the stage for the nation's westward expansion. While Jefferson was in office, the United States also fought its first foreign war, known as the First Barbary War, in the Mediterranean, and briefly invaded present-day Libya. During his second term, Jefferson's vice president, Aaron Burr, was tried for treason.

05

Andrew Jackson

Andrew Jackson (March 4, 1829 – March 4, 1837), known as "Old Hickory," is considered the nation's first populist president. As a self-styled man of the people, Jackson earned fame for his exploits at the Battle of New Orleans during the War of 1812 and later against the Seminole Indians in Florida. His first run for the presidency in 1824 ended in a narrow loss to John Quincy Adams, but four years later Jackson won in a landslide.

In office, Jackson and his Democratic allies successfully dismantled the Second Bank of the United States, ending federal efforts at regulating the economy. An avowed proponent of westward expansion, Jackson had long advocated for the forced removal of Native Americans east of the Mississippi. Thousands perished along the so-called Trail of Tears under relocation programs Jackson implemented.

06

Theodore Roosevelt

Theodore Roosevelt (September 14, 1901 – March 4, 1909) came to power after the sitting president, William McKinley, was assassinated. At age 42, Roosevelt was the youngest man to take office. During his two terms in office,

Roosevelt used the bully pulpit of the presidency to pursue a muscular domestic and foreign policy.

He implemented strong regulations to curb the power of large corporations like Standard Oil and the nation's railroads. He also beefed up consumer protections with the Pure Food and Drug Act, which gave birth to the modern Food and Drug Administration, and created the first national parks. Roosevelt also pursued an aggressive foreign policy, mediating the end of the Russo-Japanese War and developing the Panama Canal.

07

Harry S. Truman

Harry S. Truman (April 12, 1945 – January 20, 1953) came to power after serving as vice president during Franklin Roosevelt's final term in office. Following FDR's death, Truman guided the U.S through the closing months of World War II, including the decision to use the new atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki in Japan.

In the years after the war, relations with the Soviet Union quickly deteriorated into a "Cold War" that would last until the 1980s. Under Truman's leadership, the U.S. launched the Berlin Airlift to combat a Soviet blockade of the German capital and created the multibillion-dollar Marshall Plan to rebuild war-torn Europe. In 1950, the nation became mired in the Korean War, which would outlast Truman's presidency.

08

Woodrow Wilson

Woodrow Wilson (March 4, 1913 – March 4, 1921) began his first term vowing to keep the nation out of foreign entanglements. But by his second term, Wilson did an about-face and led the U.S. into World War I. At its conclusion, he began a vigorous campaign to create a global alliance to prevent future conflicts. But the resulting League of Nations, a precursor to the United Nations of today, was largely hobbled by the United States' refusal to participate after rejecting the Treaty of Versailles.

09

James K. Polk

James K. Polk (March 4, 1845 – March 4, 1849) served only one term, but it was a busy one. He increased the size of the United States more than any president other than Jefferson through the acquisition of California and New Mexico as a result of the Mexican-American War, which occurred during his tenure. He also settled the nation's dispute with Great Britain over its northwest border, giving the U.S. Washington and Oregon, and giving Canada British Columbia. During his time in office, the U.S. issued its first postage stamp and the foundation for the Washington Monument was laid.

10

Dwight Eisenhower

During Dwight Eisenhower's (January 20, 1953 – January 20, 1961) tenure, the conflict in Korea ceased (though the war was never officially ended), while at

home the U.S. experienced tremendous economic growth. A number of milestones in the Civil Rights Movement took place, including the Supreme Court decision Brown v. Board of Education in 1954, the Montgomery Bus Boycott of 1955-56, and the Civil Rights Act of 1957. While in office, Eisenhower signed legislation that created the interstate highway system and the National Aeronautics and Space Administration or NASA. In foreign policy, Eisenhower maintained a strong anti-communist policy in Europe and Asia, expanding the nation's nuclear arsenal and supporting the government of South Vietnam.

Theme 13. Geography of the USA

The term "United States", when used in the geographical sense, is the contiguous United States, the state of Alaska, the island state of Hawaii, the five insular territories of Puerto Rico, Northern Mariana Islands, U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, and American Samoa, and minor outlying possessions. The United States shares land borders with Canada and Mexico and maritime borders with Russia, Cuba, and the Bahamas in addition to Canada and Mexico. The United States's northern border with Canada is the world's longest bi-national land border.

General characteristics

The United States shares land borders with Canada (to the north) and Mexico (to the south), and a territorial water border with Russia in the northwest, and two territorial water borders in the southeast between Florida and Cuba, and Florida and the Bahamas. The contiguous forty-eight states are otherwise bounded by the Pacific Ocean on the west, the Atlantic Ocean on the east, and the Gulf of Mexico to the southeast. Alaska borders the Pacific Ocean to the south and southwest, the Bering Strait to the west, and the Arctic Ocean to the north, while Hawaii lies far to the southwest of the mainland in the Pacific Ocean.

Forty-eight of the states are in the single region between Canada and Mexico; this group is referred to, with varying precision and formality, as the continental or contiguous United States, and as the Lower 48. Alaska, which is not included in the term contiguous United States, is at the northwestern end of North America, separated from the Lower 48 by Canada.

The capital city, Washington, District of Columbia, is a federal district located on land donated by the state of Maryland. (Virginia had also donated land, but it was returned in 1849.) The United States also has overseas territories with varying levels of independence and organization: in the Caribbean the territories of Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands, and in the Pacific the inhabited territories of Guam, American Samoa, and the Northern Mariana Islands, along with a number of uninhabited island territories.

Climate

Due to its large size and wide range of geographic features, the United States contains examples of nearly every global climate. The climate is subtropical in the Southern United States, tropical in Hawaii and southern Florida, polar in

Alaska, semiarid in the Great Plains west of the 100th meridian, Mediterranean in coastal California and arid in the Great Basin and the Southwest. Its comparatively favorable agricultural climate contributed (in part) to the country's rise as a world power, with infrequent severe drought in the major agricultural regions, a general lack of widespread flooding, and a mainly temperate climate that receives adequate precipitation.

The main influence on U.S. weather is the polar jet stream which migrates northward into Canada in the summer months, and then southward into the USA in the winter months. The jet stream brings in large low pressure systems from the northern Pacific Ocean that enter the US mainland over the Pacific Northwest. The Cascade Range, Sierra Nevada, and Rocky Mountains pick up most of the moisture from these systems as they move eastward. Greatly diminished by the time they reach the High Plains, much of the moisture has been sapped by the orographic effect as it is forced over several mountain ranges.

Once it moves over the Great Plains, uninterrupted flat land allows it to reorganize and can lead to major clashes of air masses. In addition, moisture from the Gulf of Mexico is often drawn northward. When combined with a powerful jet stream, this can lead to violent thunderstorms, especially during spring and summer. Sometimes during winter these storms can combine with another low pressure system as they move up the East Coast and into the Atlantic Ocean, where they intensify rapidly. These storms are known as Nor'easters and often bring widespread, heavy rain, wind, and snowfall to New England. The uninterrupted grasslands of the Great Plains also lead to some of the most extreme climate swings in the world. Temperatures can rise or drop rapidly and winds can be extreme, and the flow of heat waves or Arctic air masses often advance uninterrupted through the plains.

The Great Basin and Columbia Plateau (the Intermontane Plateaus) are arid or semiarid regions that lie in the rain shadow of the Cascades and Sierra Nevada. Precipitation averages less than 15 inches (38 cm). The Southwest is a hot desert, with temperatures exceeding 100 °F (37.8 °C) for several weeks at a time in summer. The Southwest and the Great Basin are also affected by the monsoon from the Gulf of California from July to September, which brings localized but often severe thunderstorms to the region.

Much of California consists of a Mediterranean climate, with sometimes excessive rainfall from October–April and nearly no rain the rest of the year. In the Pacific Northwest rain falls year-round, but is much heavier during winter and spring. The mountains of the west receive abundant precipitation and very heavy snowfall. The Cascades are one of the snowiest places in the world, with some places averaging over 600 inches (1,524 cm) of snow annually, but the lower elevations closer to the coast receive very little snow.

Florida has a subtropical climate in the northern part of the state and a tropical climate in the southern part of the state. Summers are wet and winters are dry in Florida. Annually much of Florida, as well as the deep southern states, are frost-free. The mild winters of Florida allow a massive tropical fruit industry to thrive in

the central part of the state, making the US second to only Brazil in citrus production in the world.

Another significant (but localized) weather effect is lake-effect snow that falls south and east of the Great Lakes, especially in the hilly portions of the Upper Peninsula of Michigan and on the Tug Hill Plateau in New York. The lake effect dumped well over 5 feet (1.52 m) of snow in the area of Buffalo, New York throughout the 2006-2007 winter. The Wasatch Front and Wasatch Rangein Utah can also receive significant lake effect accumulations from the Great Salt Lake.

Theme 14. Political System of the USA (formation of the Senate)

The United States Senate is the upper chamber of the United States Congress, which along with the United States House of Representatives—the lower chamber—comprises the legislative branch of the federal government of the United States. Like its counterpart, the Senate was established by the United States Constitution and convened for its first meeting on March 4, 1789 at Federal Hall in New York City. The history of the institution begins prior to that date, at the 1787 Constitutional Convention, in James Madison's Virginia Plan, which proposed a bicameral national legislature, and in the Connecticut Compromise, an agreement reached between delegates from small-population states and those from large-population states that in part defined the structure and representation that each state would have in the new Congress.

Constitutional creation

The U.S. Senate, named after the ancient Roman Senate, was designed as a more deliberative body than the U.S. House. Edmund Randolph called for its members to be "less than the House of Commons ... to restrain, if possible, the fury of democracy." According to James Madison, "The use of the Senate is to consist in proceeding with more coolness, with more system, and with more wisdom, than the popular branch." Instead of two-year terms as in the House, senators serve six-year terms, giving them more authority to ignore mass sentiment in favor of the country's broad interests. The smaller number of members and staggered terms also give the Senate a greater sense of community.

Despite their past grievances with specific ruling British governments, many among the Founding Fathers of the United States who gathered for the Constitutional Conventaion had retained a great admiration for the British system of governance. Alexander Hamilton called it "the best in the world," and said he "doubted whether anything short of it would do in America." In his Defense of the Constitutions of Government of the United States, John Adams stated "the English Constitution is, in theory, both for the adjustment of the balance and the prevention of its vibrations, the most stupendous fabric of human invention." In general, they viewed the Senate to be an American version of House of Lords. John Dickinson said the Senate should "consist of the most distinguished characters, distinguished for their rank in life and their weight of property, and bearing as strong a likeness

to the British House of Lords as possible."The Senate was also intended to give states with smaller populations equal standing with larger states, which are given more representation in the House.

The apportionment scheme of the Senate was controversial at the Constitutional Convention. Hamilton, who was joined in opposition to equal suffrage by Madison, said equal representation despite population differences "shocks too much the ideas of justice and every human feeling."Referring to those who demanded equal representation, Madison called for the Convention "to renounce a principle which was confessedly unjust."

The delegates representing a majority of Americans might have carried the day, but at the Constitutional Convention, each state had an equal vote, and any issue could be brought up again if a state desired it. The state delegations originally voted 6–5 for proportional representation, but small states without claims of western lands reopened the issue and eventually turned the tide towards equality. On the final vote, the five states in favor of equal apportionment in the Senate—Connecticut, North Carolina, Maryland, New Jersey, and Delaware—only represented one-third of the nation's population. The four states that voted against it—Virginia, Pennsylvania, South Carolina, and Georgia—represented almost twice as many people than the proponents. Convention delegate James Wilson wrote "Our Constituents, had they voted as their representatives did, would have stood as 2/3 against equality, and 1/3 only in favor of it".One reason the large states accepted the Connecticut Compromise was a fear that the small states would either refuse to join the Union, or, as Gunning Bedford, Jr. of Delaware threatened, "the small ones would find some foreign ally of more honor and good faith, who will take them by the hand and do them justice".

In Federalist No. 62, James Madison, the "Father of the Constitution," openly admitted that the equal suffrage in the Senate was a compromise, a "lesser evil," and not born out of any political theory. "It is superfluous to try, by the standard of theory, a part of the Constitution which is allowed on all hands to be the result, not of theory, but 'of a spirit of amity, and that mutual deference and concession which the peculiarity of our political situation rendered indispensable.'"

Even Gunning Bedford, Jr. of Delaware admitted that he only favored equal representation because it advanced the interests of his own state. "Can it be expected that the small states will act from pure disinterestedness? Are we to act with greater purity than the rest of mankind?"

Once the issue of equal representation had been settled, the delegates addressed the size of the body: to how many senators would each state be entitled? Giving each state one senator was considered insufficient, as it would make the achievement of a quorum more difficult. A proposal from the Pennsylvania delegates for each state to elect three senators was discussed, but the resulting greater size was deemed a disadvantage. When the delegates voted on a proposal for two senators per state, all states supported this number.

Since 1789, differences in population between states have become more pronounced. At the time of the Connecticut Compromise, the largest state, Virginia,

had only twelve times the population of the smallest state, Delaware. Today, the largest state, California, has a population that is seventy times greater than the population of the smallest state, Wyoming. In 1790, it would take a theoretical 30% of the population to elect a majority of the Senate, today it would take 17%.

1789–1865

The Senate originally met, virtually in secret, on the second floor of Federal Hall in New York City in a room that allowed no spectators. For five years, no notes were published on Senate proceedings.

A procedural issue of the early Senate was what role the vice president, the President of the Senate, should have. The first vice president was allowed to craft legislation and participate in debates, but those rights were taken away relatively quickly. John Adams seldom missed a session, but later vice presidents made Senate attendance a rarity. Although the founders intended the Senate to be the slower legislative body, in the early years of the Republic, it was the House that took its time passing legislation. Alexander Hamilton's Bank of the United States and Assumption Bill (he was then Treasury Secretary), both of which were controversial, easily passed the Senate, only to meet opposition from the House.

In 1797, Thomas Jefferson began the vice presidential tradition of only attending Senate sessions on special occasions. Despite his frequent absences Jefferson did make his mark on the body with the Senate book of parliamentary procedure, his 1801 Manual of Parliamentary Practice for the Use of the Senate of the United States, which is still used.

The decades before the American Civil War are thought of as the "Golden Age" of the Senate. Backed by public opinion and President Jefferson, in 1804, the House voted to impeachSupreme Court Justice Samuel Chase, 73–32. The Senate voted against conviction, 18–16.

The Senate seemed to bring out the best in Aaron Burr, who as vice president presided over the impeachment trial. At the conclusion of the trial Burr said:

This House is a sanctuary; a citadel of law, of order, and of liberty; and it is here–in this exalted refuge; here if anywhere, will resistance be made to the storms of political phrensy and the silent arts of corruption

Even Burr's many critics conceded that he handled himself with great dignity, and the trial with fairness.

Over the next few decades the Senate rose in reputation in the United States and the world. John C. Calhoun, Daniel Webster, Thomas Hart Benton, Stephen A. Douglas, and Henry Clay overshadowed several presidents. Sir Henry Maine called the Senate "the only thoroughly successful institution which has been established since the tide of modern democracy began to run." William Ewart Gladstone said the Senate was "the most remarkable of all the inventions of modern politics."

Among the greatest of debates in Senate history was the Webster–Hayne debate of January 1830, pitting the sectional interests of Daniel Webster's New England against Robert Y. Hayne's South.

During the pre-Civil War decades, the nation had two contentious arguments over the North–South balance in the Senate. Since the banning of slavery north of the Mason–Dixon line there had always been equal numbers of slave and free states. In the Missouri Compromise of 1820, brokered by Henry Clay, Maine was admitted to the Union as a free state to counterbalance Missouri. The Compromise of 1850, brokered by Henry Clay and Stephen Douglas, helped postpone the Civil War.

1865–1913

In the post-Civil War era, the Senate dealt with great national issues such as Reconstruction and monetary policy. Given the strong political parties of the Third Party System, the leading politicians controlled enough support in state legislatures to be elected Senators. In an age of unparalleled industrial expansion, entrepreneurs had the prestige previously reserved to victorious generals, and many were elected to the Senate.

In 1890–1910 a handful of Republicans controlled the chamber, led by Nelson Aldrich (Rhode Island), Orville H. Platt (Connecticut), John Coit Spooner (Wisconsin), William Boyd Allison (Iowa), along with national party leader Mark Hanna (Ohio). Aldrich designed all the major tax and tariff laws of the early 20th century, including the Federal reserve system. Among the Democrats Arthur Pue Gorman of Maryland stood out.

From 1871 to 1898, the Senate did not approve any treaties. The Senate scuttled a long series of reciprocal trade agreements, blocked deals to annex the Dominican Republic and the Danish West Indies, defeated an arbitration deal with Britain, and forced the renegotiation of the pact to build the Panama Canal. Finally, in 1898, the Senate nearly refused to ratify the treaty that ended the Spanish–American War.

Since 1945

The popular Senate drama of the early 1950s was Wisconsin Senator Joseph McCarthy's investigations of alleged communists. After years of unchallenged power, McCarthy fell as a result of producing little hard evidence for his claims while the claims themselves became more elaborate, even questioning the leadership of the United States Army. McCarthy was censured by the Senate in 1954.

Prior to World War II, Senate majority leader had few formal powers. But in 1937, the rule giving majority leader right of first recognition was created. With the addition of this rule, the Senate majority leader enjoyed far greater control over the agenda of which bills to be considered on the floor.

During Lyndon Baines Johnson's tenure as Senate leader, the leader gained new powers over committee assignments.

In 1971 Paulette Desell was appointed by Senator Jacob K. Javits as the Senate's first female page.

In 2009 Kathie Alvarez became the Senate's first female legislative clerk

Theme 15. Political Parties of the USA

Political parties in the United States are mostly dominated by a two-party system consisting of the Democrats and the Republicans. Though, the United States Constitution has always been silent on the issue of political parties, since at the time it was signed in 1787 there were no parties in the nation.

Overview

The need to win popular support in a republic led to the American invention of voter-based political parties in the 1790s. Americans were especially innovative in devising new campaign techniques that linked public opinion with public policy through the party.

Political scientists and historians have divided the development of America's two-party system into five eras. The first two-party system consisted of the Federalist Party, who supported the ratification of the Constitution, and the Democratic-Republican Party or the Anti-Administration party (Anti-Federalists), who opposed the powerful central government, among others, that the Constitution established when it took effect in 1789.

The modern two-party system consists of the Democratic Party and the Republican Party. Several third parties also operate in the U.S., and from time to time elect someone to local office. The largest third party since the 1980s is the Libertarian Party.

Besides the Constitution, Green, and Libertarian parties, there are many other political parties that receive only minimal support and only appear on the ballot in one or a few states.

Some political candidates, and many voters, choose not to identify with a particular political party. In some states, independents are not allowed to vote in primary elections, but in others, they can vote in any primary election of their choice. Although the term "independent" often is used as a synonym for "moderate," "centrist," or "swing voter," to refer to a politician or voter who holds views that incorporate facets of both liberal and conservative ideologies, an independent can be of any ideological or political persuasion.

Minor parties and independents

Although American politics have been dominated by the two-party system, several other political parties have also emerged throughout the country's history. The oldest third party was the Anti-Masonic Party and was formed in upstate New York in 1828; the party's creators feared the Freemasons, believing they were a powerful secret society that was trying to rule the country in defiance of republican principles.

Modern U.S. political party system

The modern political party system in the U.S. is a two-party system dominated by the Democratic Party and the Republican Party. These two parties have won every United States presidential election since 1852 and have controlled the United States Congress to some extent since at least 1856.

The two major parties:

Democratic Party

The Democratic Party is one of two major political parties in the U.S. Founded as the Democratic-Republican Party in 1792 by Thomas Jefferson and James Madison, it is the oldest extant voter-based political party in the world.

The Democratic Party at its founding supported a different set of issues than it presently supports. From its founding until the mid-20th century, the Democratic Party was the dominant party among white Southerners, and as such, was then the party most associated with the defense of slavery. However, following the Great Society under Lyndon B. Johnson, the Democratic Party became the more progressive party on issues of civil rights, while losing dominance in the Southern states to the Republicans.

The Democratic Party since 1912 has positioned itself as the liberal party on domestic issues. The economic philosophy of Franklin D. Roosevelt, which has strongly influenced modern American liberalism, has shaped much of the party's agenda since 1932. Roosevelt's New Deal coalition controlled the White House until 1968, with the exception of the two terms of President Eisenhower from 1953–1961. Since the mid-20th century, Democrats have generally been in the center-left and currently support social justice, social liberalism, a mixed economy, and the welfare state, although Bill Clinton and other New Democrats have pushed for free trade and neoliberalism, which is seen to have shifted the party rightwards. Democrats are currently strongest on the East and West Coasts and in major American urban centers. African-Americans and Latinos tend to be disproportionately Democratic, as do trade unions.

In 2004, it was the largest political party, with 72 million registered voters (42.6% of 169 million registered) claiming affiliation. Although his party lost the election for president in 2004, Barack Obama would later go on to become president in 2009 and continue to be the president until January 2017. Obama was the 15th Democrat to hold the office, and from the 2006 midterm elections until the 2014 midterm elections, the Democratic Party was also the majority party in the United States Senate.

A 2011 USA Today review of state voter rolls indicates that the number of registered Democrats declined in 25 of 28 states (some states do not register voters by party). During this time, Republican registration also declined, as independent or no preference voting was on the rise. Democrats were still the largest political party with more than 42 million voters (compared with 30 million Republicans and 24 million independents). But in 2011 Democrats numbers shrank 800,000, and from 2008 they were down by 1.7 million, or 3.9%.

Republican Party

The Republican Party is one of the two major contemporary political parties in the United States of America. Since the 1880s it has been nicknamed (by the media) the "Grand Old Party" or GOP, although it is younger than the Democratic Party.

Founded in 1854 by Northern anti-slavery activists and modernizers, the Republican Party rose to prominence in 1860 with the election of Abraham Lincoln, who used the party machinery to support victory in the American Civil

War. The GOP dominated national politics during the Third Party System, from 1854 to 1896, and the Fourth Party System from 1896 to 1932.

Since its founding, the Republican Party has been the more market-oriented of the two American political parties, often favoring policies that aid American business interests. As a party whose power was once based on the voting clout of Union Army veterans, this party has traditionally supported more aggressive defense measures and more lavish veteran's benefits. Today, the Republican Party supports an American conservative platform, with further foundations in economic liberalism, fiscal conservatism, and social conservatism. The Republican Party tends to be strongest in the Southern United States and the "flyover states", as well as suburban and rural areas in other states. One significant base of support for the Republican Party are Evangelical Christians, who have wielded significant clout in the party since the early 1970s.

PresidentDonald Trump is the 20th and the current Republican to be elected to the office of President of the United States. Since the 2010 midterm elections, the Republicans have held a majority in the United States House of Representatives, and since the 2014 elections, the Senate.

Major third parties

Libertarian Party:

The Libertarian Party was founded on December 11, 1971.It is the largest continuing third party in the United States, claiming more than 511,277 registered voters across all 50 states. They currently have about 223 elected officials, more than any of the other minor parties, including 4 state legislators.

The 2012 Libertarian Party nominee for United States President was former New Mexico governor, Gary Johnson. He achieved ballot access in every state except for Michigan (only as a write-in candidate) and Oklahoma. He received over one million votes in the election. In 2016, Johnson ran again, receiving over four million votes, or 3% of the popular vote.

The Libertarian Party's core mission is to reduce the size, influence and expenditures of all levels of government. To this effect, the party supports minimally regulated markets, a less powerful federal government, strong civil liberties, drug liberalization, separation of church and state, open immigration, non-interventionism and neutrality in diplomatic relations, free trade and free movement to all foreign countries, and a more representative republic. As of 2016, it is the third largest organized political party in the United States.

Green Party:

In the United States, the Green Party has been active as a third party since the 1980s. The party first gained widespread public attention during Ralph Nader's second presidential run in 2000. Currently, the primary national Green Party organization in the U.S. is the Green Party of the United States, which has eclipsed the earlier Greens/Green Party USA.

The Green Party in the United States has won elected office mostly at the local level; most winners of public office in the United States who are considered Greens have won nonpartisan-ballot elections (that is, elections in which the

candidates' party affiliations were not printed on the ballot). In 2005, the Party had 305,000 registered members in the District of Columbia and 20 states that allow party registration. During the 2006 elections the party had ballot access in 31 states. In 2017, Ralph Chapman, a Representative in the Maine House of Representative switched his association from Unaffiliated to the Green Independent Party. The United States Green Party generally holds a left-wing ideology on most important issues. Greens emphasize environmentalism, non-hierarchicalparticipatory democracy, social justice, respect for diversity, peace and nonviolence. As of 2016, it is the fourth largest organized political party in the United States.

Constitution Party:

The Constitution Party is a small national, conservative political party in the United States. It was founded as the U.S. Taxpayers Party in 1992 by Howard Phillips. The party's official name was changed to the Constitution Party in 1999; however, some state affiliate parties are known under different names.

The Constitution Party is strongly pro-life (i.e. opposed to abortion), and supports gun rights, and restrictions on immigration. It calls for protectionist trade policies.

In 2006, Rick Jore of Montana became the first Constitution Party candidate elected to a state-level office, though the Constitution Party of Montana had disaffiliated itself from the national party a short time before the election.

In 2010 former Congressman Tom Tancredo was the Constitution Party candidate for governor of Colorado coming in second with 617,030 votes, 36.4% and ahead of the Republican candidate, Dan Maes, with 11.1%.

The Constitution Party's 2012 presidential nominee was former Congressmen Virgil Goode of Virginia.

Tennessee Attorney Darrell Castle was the 2016 Constitution Party nominee for President of the United States and Scott Bradley of Utah was the nominee for Vice President.

As of 2016, it is the fifth largest organized political party in the United States.

Theme 16. States and capitals of the USA

Washington, D.C. has been the federal capital city of the United States since 1790. Each U.S. state has its own capital city, as do many of its insular areas. Historically, most states have not changed their capital city since becoming a state, but the capital cities of their respective preceding colonies, territories, kingdoms, and republics typically changed multiple times. There have also been other governments within the current borders of the United States with their own capitals, such as the Republic of Texas, Native American nations, and other unrecognized governments.

Capitals of the United States

The Albany Conference (June 18–July 11, 1754), or "The Conference of Albany", was the first meeting at which representatives of British colonies in North

America (seven of them) gathered to discuss questions of common interest. It met in the Stadt Huys, the City Hall of Albany, New York (demolished after a fire in 1836). The original purpose of the Conference was to coordinate relations with the Indians and common defensive measures against the French threat from Canada (see French and Indian War#Albany Conference). At that meeting the major topic of discussion, however, was the Albany Plan, presented by Benjamin Franklin, delegate from Pennsylvania, setting up a unified (though not independent) government for the colonies. Although the delegates approved the plan (after modifications) unanimously, it was not approved by any of the territorial governments, or by the British government. It was used later in the drafting of the Articles of Confederation.

The Stamp Act Congress (October 7–25, 1765), or First Congress of the American Colonies, met in City Hall, today Federal Hall, in New York City.

The Continental Congress, later called the First Continental Congress (September 5–October 26, 1774), embryo of what would become the United States government, met in Carpenters' Hall in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, today (2018) part of Independence National Historical Park. Delegate Joseph Gallowaypresented the Galloway Plan for a unified government, incorporating some elements of the Albany Plan, but it was not accepted.

The Second Continental Congress (1775–1781), in which the U.S. Declaration of Independence was debated and signed, and which starting in 1775 coordinated the American Revolutionary War, met primarily in the Pennsylvania State House, today Independence Hall, in Independence National Historic Park. The room as it was then is accurately depicted in the famous painting Declaration of Independence by John Trumbull, commissioned by Congress, which has hung in the U.S. Capitol Rotunda since 1825. The Articles of Confederation, though drafted in York, Pennsylvania, were adopted in Philadelphia in 1777, subject to the states' approval. The Second Continental Congress also met briefly in the following locations:

Henry Fite House, Baltimore, Maryland: December 20, 1776 to February 27, 1777, to avoid capture by British forces. The building was destroyed by fire in 1904.

Court House, Lancaster, Pennsylvania: September 27, 1777 (one day)

Court House, York, Pennsylvania: September 30, 1777 to June 2, 1778

College Hall, College of Philadelphia: July 2, 1778 to July 20, 1778

The Congress of the Confederation (1781–1789) did not have an official capitol. It met in the following locations:

Independence Hall, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania: March 1, 1781 to June 21, 1783 (In 1783 Congress was forced to move from Philadelphia due to a riot of angry soldiers. See Pennsylvania Mutiny of 1783.)

Nassau Hall, Princeton, New Jersey: June 30, 1783 to November 4, 1783

Maryland State House, Annapolis, Maryland: November 26, 1783 to August 19, 1784

French Arms Tavern, Trenton, New Jersey: November 1, 1784 to December 24, 1784

Federal Hall, New York City, New York: January 11, 1785 to October 2, 1788 Demolished in 1812.

Fraunces Tavern, New York City, New York: October 6, 1788 to March 3, 1789

The United States Constitution addressed (Article 1, section 8, clause 17) the need for a fixed U.S. Capitol. This led to the establishment of the District of Columbiaand the founding of Washington as the nation's capitol. Until the Capitol building was completed, and after it was burned by the British in 1814, requiring its rebuilding, Congress met in various places:

Federal Hall, New York City, New York: March 4, 1789 to December 5, 1790. This is where George Washington was inaugurated as first President. Demolished in 1812.

Congress Hall, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, adjacent to the Pennsylvania State House (Independence Hall) and also part of Independence National Historic Park: December 6, 1790 to May 14, 1800. Built for the purpose of being the U.S. capitol. This is pursuant to the Residence Act of 1790, which designated Philadelphia as U.S. Capital for 10 years.

United States Capitol. Territory of Columbia: November 17, 1800 to February 27, 1801; District of Columbia: February 27, 1801 to May 2, 1802; Washington, D.C.: May 3, 1802 to August 24, 1814, when the British burned it.(President James Madison fled to the home of Quaker Caleb Bentley, in Brookeville, Maryland, where he stayed one night, August 26, 1814. As such, the town claims to have been the "U.S. Capital for a Day", despite the fact that Congress never met there.)

Blodgett's Hotel (one of the few surviving buildings large enough to hold all members), September 19, 1814 – December 7, 1815

Old Brick Capitol, Washington, D.C.: December 8, 1815 to 1819 (while the original Capitol was being rebuilt). Although the name says "old", the cornerstone was laid July 4, 1815. It was financed by Washington real-estate investors, who had heard rumors that some members of Congress were considering relocation of the national capital in the aftermath of the burning.

United States Capitol, Washington, D.C.: 1819 to present

US State	State Capital	US State	State Capital
Alabama	Montgomery	Montana	Helena
Alaska	Juneau	Nebraska	Lincoln
Arizona	Phoenix	Nevada	Carson City
Arkansas	Little Rock	New Hampshire	Concord
California	Sacramento	New Jersey	Trenton
Colorado	Denver	New Mexico	Santa Fe

Connecticut	Hartford	New York	Albany
Delaware	Dover	North Carolina	Raleigh
Florida	Tallahassee	North Dakota	Bismarck
Georgia	Atlanta	Ohio	Columbus
Hawaii	Honolulu	Oklahoma	Oklahoma City
Idaho	Boise	Oregon	Salem
Illinois	Springfield	Pennsylvania	Harrisburg
Indiana	Indianapolis	Rhode Island	Providence
Iowa	Des Moines	South Carolina	Columbia
Kansas	Topeka	South Dakota	Pierre
Kentucky	Frankfort	Tennessee	Nashville
Louisiana	Baton Rouge	Texas	Austin
Maine	Augusta	Utah	Salt Lake City
Maryland	Annapolis	Vermont	Montpelier
Massachusetts	Boston	Virginia	Richmond
Michigan	Lansing	Washington	Olympia
Minnesota	St. Paul	West Virginia	Charleston
Mississippi	Jackson	Wisconsin	Madison
Missouri	Jefferson City	Wyoming	Cheyenne

Insular area capitals

An insular area is a United States territory that is neither a part of one of the fifty states nor a part of the District of Columbia, the nation's federal district.

Theme 17. Famous people and places of the USA

Famous people of the USA

Armstrong, Neil

Neil Armstrong was very interested in flying when he was a young man. He was awarded his pilot's licence at the age of 16, even before he had learnt to drive a car. The following year he became a naval air cadet, and went on to fly in the Korean War. Later in the 1950s, he became a test pilot for NASA (National

Aeronautics and Space Administration) before joining the US space programme in 1962. His first mission in space, on Gemini 8 in 1966, ended earlier than expected when he had to make an emergency landing in the Pacific Ocean.

In July 1969 Armstrong joined fellow astronauts Edwin ‘Buzz’ Aldrin and Michael Collins on the Apollo 11 mission. They took four days to reach the Moon. On 20 July Armstrong became the first person to walk on the Moon. As he stepped off the ‘Eagle’ (the lunar landing module), he said, ‘That's one small step for (a) man, one giant leap for mankind.’

Disney, Walt

Walter Disney grew up on a Missouri farm, and enjoyed sketching the animals around him. He later drew advertisements for an advertising agency, before starting on cartoon films for the Laugh-o-Gram company in Kansas. He created Mickey Mouse in 1928 and Donald Duck in 1934. These quickly became the world's favourite cartoon characters. He then started making full-length animated films, including Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs (1937), Pinocchio (1940) and Bambi (1942). Sometimes he was criticized for changing famous stories to suit his cartoons.

His film company became the biggest producer of cartoons, but it also made children's films with real actors such as 20,000 Leagues Under the Sea (1954) and films such as Mary Poppins (1964) which combined cartoon characters and real actors. Disney is now one of the most successful film companies in the world, making films for adults as well as children.

In 1954 Walt Disney opened Disneyland, the huge amusement park in California. The even bigger Disneyworld in Florida opened five years after his death, and Disneyworld near Paris, France, opened in 1992, originally under the name of EuroDisney.

Armstrong, Neil

Neil Armstrong was very interested in flying when he was a young man. He was awarded his pilot's licence at the age of 16, even before he had learnt to drive a car. The following year he became a naval air cadet, and went on to fly in the Korean War. Later in the 1950s, he became a test pilot for NASA (National Aeronautics and Space Administration) before joining the US space programme in 1962. His first mission in space, on Gemini 8 in 1966, ended earlier than expected when he had to make an emergency landing in the Pacific Ocean.

In July 1969 Armstrong joined fellow astronauts Edwin ‘Buzz’ Aldrin and Michael Collins on the Apollo 11 mission. They took four days to reach the Moon. On 20 July Armstrong became the first person to walk on the Moon. As he stepped off the ‘Eagle’ (the lunar landing module), he said, ‘That's one small step for (a) man, one giant leap for mankind.’

Ford, Henry

Henry Ford was born on his family's farm, but he did not like farming. When he was 15, he became an apprentice in a machine shop, and at night he worked repairing watches.

In 1893 Ford built his first car. It had two cylinders, two forward gears and a

reverse gear. He drove it for a thousand miles, then sold it and built two bigger cars. Then, in 1903, he started the Ford Motor Company. Using light, strong vanadium steel, he built cheap, cars for everyone to buy. In 1908, he built the first Ford 'Model T', the 'Tin Lizzie', which sold for $825. By June, he was selling a hundred cars a day. By 1927, 15 million Model Ts had been made, and the Ford Motor Company was worth 700 million dollars. The cars were made on an assembly line: as they slowly moved the 300 metres through the factory, workers completed simple single tasks on them. It was boring work, but Ford paid the highest wages in the industry, and once, when he advertised for more workers, the police had to control the crowd.

Ford went on to produce many fine cars in America and in Europe. They were simple, cheap and reliable: 'You can afford a Ford' was one slogan. However, keeping things simple sometimes meant less choice. 'You can have any colour you like,' said Henry Ford of his Tin Lizzie, 'so long as it's black.'

Jackson, Michael

Michael Jackson was hailed as a singing and dancing child genius from the age of 6. He began his show business career in 1968 when he and his brothers formed a group called The Jackson Five. They had a string of hits in the USA and Europe. Jackson's style was similar to that of such vocalists as Stevie Wonder and Diana Ross, the singing star who encouraged him in his early days. In 1971, while still singing with The Jackson Five, he also began a solo career

While filming The Wiz, a 1978 remake of The Wizard of Oz with a black cast, Jackson met producer and composer Quincey Jones. They worked closely together after that. Jackson's first album with Jones was Off the Wall (1979), which sold 19 million copies. This was followed by Thriller (1982), which sold 38 million copies and became the biggest selling album ever, Bad (1987), Dangerous (1991) and HIStory.

Over the years, Jackson developed a distinctive singing voice and his high-speed dancing drew praise from experts such as Fred Astaire. His spectacular stage shows were one of the main show business attractions of the 1980s. However, rumours of plastic surgery to reshape his face, his bizarre pets and the fact that he lives hidden away in a luxurious Hollywood mansion, led to Jackson being called 'Wacko Jacko' by some newspapers. A police investigation into his private life in 1994–1995 developed into a media frenzy. Nevertheless, he still remains popular with his millions of fans and continues to have hit records all over the world. In 1994 he married Lisa-Marie, the daughter of Elvis Presley.

Rockefeller, John D.

John Davison Rockefeller was working as a businessman when the first oil well was drilled in the USA in 1859. Four years later he started an oil refinery near Cleveland, Ohio. By 1870 his company had become the Standard Oil Company, which began to buy up many other oil companies.

By 1882 Rockefeller's company had become almost the only refiner of oil in the USA, with 95 per cent of all business. This monopoly made him into a multimillionaire. Once he had made his fortune he began to look for good and

useful ways to spend it. In 1891 he paid for the University of Chicago to be set up. Later he also set up the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research (which became Rockefeller University) in New York City. In 1913, after he retired from the oil business, he began the Rockefeller Foundation to finance many charitable activities.

Famous places of the USA

Grand Canyon

The Grand Canyon is located in northern Arizona and is one of the great tourist attractions in the United States. Carved over several million years by the Colorado River, the canyon attains a depth of over 1.6 km (1 mile) and 446 km (277 miles) long. The Grand Canyon is not the deepest or the longest canyon in the world but the overwhelming size and its intricate and colorful landscape offers visitor spectacular vistas that are unmatched throughout the world.

Manhattan

Manhattan is one of New York's five boroughs and is what people most often think of when they picture New York City. It's familiar skyline and sights have been featured a thousand times on screen. Walk in the shadow of the skyscrapers, picture the Statue of Liberty, see a Broadway show , climb the Empire State building, stroll Central Park, window shop on 5th Avenue or stagger around a museum.

Golden Gate Bridge (San Francisco)

Considered the most beautiful, the most photographed, bridge in the world. The Golden Gate Bridge is a suspension bridge spanning the Golden Gate, the strait between San Francisco and Marin County to the north. The Golden Gate Bridge was the longest suspension bridge span in the world when it was completed in 1937, and has become an internationally recognized symbol of San Francisco and California. It has been declared one of the Wonders of the Modern World by the American Society of Civil Engineers. The famous red-orange color of the bridge was specifically chosen to make the bridge more easily visible through the thick fog that frequently shrouds the bridge.

Niagara Falls

Situated between the state of New York and the province of Ontario, Niagara Falls is one of the most spectacular natural wonders on the North American continent. Niagara Falls is actually three different falls, the American Falls, Bridal Veil Falls and Horseshoe Falls. Horseshoe Falls is located on the Canadian side while the other are located in New York.With more than 14 million visitors each year it is one of the most visited tourist attraction in the world.

Yellowstone

Located primarily in the U.S. state of Wyoming, and also extends into Montana and Idaho, The Yellowstone National Park was the world's first national park, set aside in 1872 by the U.S. Congress to preserve the vast number of geysers, hot springs, and other thermal areas, as well as to protect the incredible wildlife and rugged beauty of the area.

Theme 18.Scientific progress in the USA

The **United States of America** came into being around the Age of Enlightenment (1685 to 1815), an era in Western philosophy in which writers and thinkers, rejecting the perceived superstitions of the past, instead chose to emphasize the intellectual, scientific and cultural life, centered upon the 18th century, in which reason was advocated as the primary source for legitimacy and authority. Enlightenment philosophers envisioned a "republic of science," where ideas would be exchanged freely and useful knowledge would improve the lot of all citizens.

The United States Constitution itself reflects the desire to encourage scientific creativity. It gives the United States Congress the power "to promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries. This clause formed the basis for the U.S. patent and copyright systems, whereby creators of original art and technology would get a government granted monopoly, which after a limited period would become free to all citizens, thereby enriching the public domain

Early American science

In the early decades of its history, the United States was relatively isolated from Europe and also rather poor. At this stage America's scientific infrastructure was still quite primitive compared to the long-established societies, institutes, and universities in Europe.

Thomas Jefferson (1743-1826), was among the most influential leaders in early America; during the American Revolutionary War (1775–83), Jefferson served in the Virginia legislature, the Continental Congress, was governor of Virginia, later serving as U.S. minister to France, U.S. secretary of state, vice president under John Adams (1735-1826), writer of the Declaration of Independence and the third U.S. president. During Jefferson’s two terms in office (1801-1809), the U.S. purchased the Louisiana Territory and Lewis and Clark explored the vast new acquisition. After leaving office, he retired to his Virginia plantation, Monticello, and helped spearhead the University of Virginia. Jefferson was also a student of agriculture who introduced various types of rice, olive trees, and grasses into the New World. He stressed the scientific aspect of the Lewis and Clark expedition (1804–06), which explored the Pacific Northwest, and detailed, systematic information on the region's plants and animals was one of that expedition's legacies.

Into the early 1900s Europe remained the center of science research, notably in England and Germany. From the 1920s onwards, the tensions heralding the onset of World War II spurred sporadic but steady scientific emigration, or “Brain Drain”, in Europe. Many of these emigrants were Jewish scientists, fearing the repercussions of anti-Semitism, especially in Germany and Italy, and sought sanctuary in the United States. One of the first to do so was Albert Einstein in 1933. At his urging, and often with his support, a good percentage of Germany's theoretical physics community, previously the best in the world, left for the US. Enrico Fermi, came from Italy in 1938 and led the work that produced the

world's first self-sustaining nuclear chain reaction. Many other scientists of note moved to the US during this same emigration wave, including Niels Bohr, Victor Weisskopf, Otto Stern, and Eugene Wigner.

The Atomic Age and "Big Science"

One of the most spectacular – and controversial – accomplishments of US technology has been the harnessing of nuclear energy. The concepts that led to the splitting of the atom were developed by the scientists of many countries, but the conversion of these ideas into the reality of nuclear fission was accomplished in the United States in the early 1940s, both by many Americans but also aided tremendously by the influx of European intellectuals fleeing the growing conflagration sparked by Adolf Hitler and Benito Mussolini in Europe.

During these crucial years, a number of the most prominent European scientists, especially physicists, immigrated to the United States, where they would do much of their most important work; these included Hans Bethe, Albert Einstein, Enrico Fermi, Leó Szilárd, Edward Teller, Felix Bloch, Emilio Segrè, and Eugene Wigner, among many, many others. American academics worked hard to find positions at laboratories and universities for their European colleagues.

After German physicists split a uraniumnucleus in 1938, a number of scientists concluded that a nuclear chain reaction was feasible and possible. The Einstein–Szilárd letter to President Franklin D. Roosevelt warned that this breakthrough would permit the construction of "extremely powerful bombs." This warning inspired an executive order towards the investigation of using uranium as a weapon, which later was superseded during World War II by the Manhattan Project the full Allied effort to be the first to build an atomic bomb. The project bore fruit when the first such bomb was exploded in New Mexico on July 16, 1945.

The development of the bomb and its use against Japan in August 1945 initiated the Atomic Age, a time of anxiety over weapons of mass destruction that has lasted through the Cold War and down to the anti-proliferation efforts of today. Even so, the Atomic Age has also been characterized by peaceful uses of nuclear power, as in the advances in nuclear power and nuclear medicine.

Along with the production of the atomic bomb, World War II also began an era known as "Big Science" with increased government patronage of scientific research. The advantage of a scientifically and technologically sophisticated country became all too apparent during wartime, and in the ideological Cold War to follow the importance of scientific strength in even peacetime applications became too much for the government to any more leave to philanthropy and private industry alone. This increased expenditure on scientific research and education propelled the United States to the forefront of the international scientific community—an amazing feat for a country which only a few decades before still had to send its most promising students to Europe for extensive scientific education.

The first US commercial nuclear power plant started operation in Illinois in 1956. At the time, the future for nuclear energy in the United States looked bright. But opponents criticized the safety of power plants and questioned whether safe

disposal of nuclear waste could be assured. A 1979 accident at Three Mile Island in Pennsylvania turned many Americans against nuclear power. The cost of building a nuclear power plant escalated, and other, more economical sources of power began to look more appealing. During the 1970s and 1980s, plans for several nuclear plants were cancelled, and the future of nuclear power remains in a state of uncertainty in the United States.

Meanwhile, American scientists have been experimenting with other renewable energy, including solar power. Although solar power generation is still not economical in much of the United States, recent developments might make it more affordable.

Telecom and technology

For the past 80 years, the United States has been integral in fundamental advances in telecommunications and technology. For example, AT&T's Bell Laboratories spearheaded the American technological revolution with a series of inventions including the first practical light emitted diode (LED), the transistor, the C programming language, and the Unix computer operating system. SRI International and Xerox PARC in Silicon Valley helped give birth to the personal computer industry, while ARPA and NASA funded the development of the ARPANET and the Internet.

Herman Hollerith was just a twenty-year-old engineer when he realized the need for a better way for the U.S. government to conduct their Census and then proceeded to develop electromechanical tabulators for that purpose. The net effect of the many changes from the 1880 census: the larger population, the data items to be collected, the Census Bureau headcount, the scheduled publications, and the use of Hollerith's electromechanical tabulators, was to reduce the time required to process the census from eight years for the 1880 census to six years for the 1890 census. That kick started The Tabulating Machine Company. By the 1960s, the company name had been changed to International Business Machines, and IBM dominated business computing. IBM revolutionized the industry by bringing out the first comprehensive family of computers (the System/360). It caused many of their competitors to either merge or go bankrupt, leaving IBM in an even more dominant position. IBM is known for its many inventions like the floppy disk, introduced in 1971, supermarket checkout products, and introduced in 1973, the IBM 3614 Consumer Transaction Facility, an early form of today's Automatic Teller Machines.

Theme 19. Customs and traditions of the USA

American culture encompasses the customs and traditions of the United States. "Culture encompasses religion, food, what we wear, how we wear it, our language, marriage, music, what we believe is right or wrong, how we sit at the table, how we greet visitors, how we behave with loved ones, and a million other things," said Cristina De Rossi, an anthropologist at Barnet and Southgate College in London.

The United States is the third largest country in the world with a population of more than 325 million, according to the U.S. Census Bureau. A child is born every 8 seconds, and a person dies every 12 seconds.

In addition to Native Americans who were already living on the continent, the population of the United States was built on immigration from other countries. Despite recent moves to close the U.S. borders to new immigrants and refugees, a new immigrant moves to the United States every 33 seconds, according to the Census Bureau.

Because of this, the United States is one of the most culturally diverse countries in the world. Nearly every region of the world has influenced American culture, most notably the English who colonized the country beginning in the early 1600s. U.S. culture has also been shaped by the cultures of Native Americans, Latin Americans, Africans and Asians.

The United States is sometimes described as a "melting pot" in which different cultures have contributed their own distinct "flavors" to American culture. Just as cultures from around the world have influenced American culture, today American culture influences the world. The term Western culture often refers broadly to the cultures of the United States and Europe.

The way people "melt" in the United States differs. "Different groups of immigrants integrate in different ways," De Rossi told Live Science. "For example, in the United States, Catholic Spanish-speaking communities might keep their language and other cultural family traditions, but are integrated in the urban community and have embraced the American way of life in many other ways."

The Northeast, South, Midwest, Southeast and Western regions of the United States all have distinct traditions and customs. Here is a brief overview of the culture of the United States.

Language

There is no official language of the United States, according to the U.S. government. While almost every language in the world is spoken in the United States, the most frequently spoken non-English languages are Spanish, Chinese, French and German. Ninety percent of the U.S. population speaks and understands at least some English, and most official business is conducted in English. Some states have official or preferred languages. For example, English and Hawaiian are the official languages in Hawaii.

The Census Bureau estimates that more than 300 languages are spoken in the United States. The bureau divides those languages into four categories: Spanish; other Indo-European languages, which includes German, Yiddish, Swedish, French, Italian, Russian, Polish, Hindi, Punjabi, Greek and several others; Asian and Pacific Island languages, including Chinese, Korean, Japanese, Thai, Tamil and more; and "all other languages," which is a category for languages that didn't fit into the first three categories, such as Hungarian, Arabic, Hebrew, languages of Africa and languages of native people of North, Central and South America.

Religion

Nearly every known religion is practiced in the United States, which was founded on the basis of religious freedom. About 71 percent of Americans identify themselves as Christians, according to information gathered by the Pew Research Center, a nonpartisan research group, in 2017. The research also found that about 23 percent had no religious affiliation at all and around 6 percent of the population is made up non-Christian religions.

The number of people who identify with no religion seems to be decreasing. According to the Pew Research Center, this category is expected to drop from 16 percent in 2015 to 13 percent in 2060.

American style

Clothing styles vary by social status, region, occupation and climate. Jeans, sneakers, baseball caps, cowboy hats and boots are some items of clothing that are closely associated with Americans. Ralph Lauren, Calvin Klein, Michael Kors and Victoria Secret are some well-known American brands.

American fashion is widely influenced by celebrities and the media, and fashion sales equal around $200 billion per year, according to a paper published by Harvard University in 2007. More and more Americans are buying fashion, electronics and more online. According to the Census Bureau, U.S. retail e-commerce sales for the first quarter of 2017 totaled around $98.1 billion.

American food

American cuisine was influenced by Europeans and Native Americans in its early history. Today, there are a number of foods that are commonly identified as American, such as hamburgers, hot dogs, potato chips, macaroni and cheese, and meat loaf. "As American as apple pie" has come to mean something that is authentically American.

There are also styles of cooking and types of foods that are specific to a region. Southern-style cooking is often called "American comfort food" and includes dishes such as fried chicken, collard greens, black-eyed peas and corn bread. Tex-Mex, popular in Texas and the Southwest, is a blend of Spanish and Mexican cooking styles and includes items such as chili and burritos, and relies heavily on shredded cheese and beans.

Jerky, dried meats that are served as snacks, is also a food that was created in the United States, according to NPR.

The arts

The United States is widely known around the world as a leader in mass media production, including television and movies. According to the U.S. Department of Commerce, the United States comprises one-third of the worldwide media and entertainment industry.

The television broadcasting industry took hold in the United States in the early 1950s, and American television programs are now shown around the world. The United States also has a vibrant movie industry, centered in Hollywood, California, and American movies are popular worldwide. The U.S. film industry earned $31 billion in revenues in 2013, and is expected to reach $771 billion by 2019, according to the U.S. Department of Commerce.

The United States' arts culture extends beyond movies and television shows, though. New York is home to Broadway, and Americans have a rich theatrical history. American folk art is an artistic style and is identified with quilts and other hand-crafted items. American music is very diverse with many, many styles, including rhythm and blues, jazz, gospel, country and western, bluegrass, rock 'n' roll and hip hop.

Theme 20. Sports and Recreation of the USA

Sports in the United States are an important part of American culture. American football is the most popular sport in the United States followed by basketball, baseball, and soccer. Tennis, golf, hockey, wrestling, auto racing, arena football, field lacrosse, box lacrosse and volleyball are also popular sports in the country.

Based on revenue, the four major professional sports leagues in the United States are Major League Baseball (MLB), the National Basketball Association (NBA), the National Football League (NFL), and the National Hockey League (NHL). The market for professional sports in the United States is roughly $69 billion, roughly 50% larger than that of all of Europe, the Middle East, and Africa combined. All four enjoy wide-ranging domestic media coverage and are considered the preeminent leagues in their respective sports in the world, although American football does not have a substantial following in other nations. Three of those leagues have teams that represent Canadian cities, and all four are the most financially lucrative sports leagues of their sport. Major League Soccer (MLS), which also includes teams based in Canada, is sometimes included in a "top five" of leagues.

Professional teams in all major sports in the United States operate as franchises within a league, meaning that a team may move to a different city if the team's owners believe there would be a financial benefit, but franchise moves are usually subject to some form of league-level approval. All major sports leagues use a similar type of regular-season schedule with a post-season playoff tournament. In addition to the major league–level organizations, several sports also have professional minor leagues, active in smaller cities across the country. As in Canada and Australia, sports leagues in the United States do not practice promotion and relegation, unlike many sports leagues in Europe.

Sports are particularly associated with education in the United States, with most high schools and universities having organized sports, and this is a unique sporting footprint for the U.S. College sports competitions play an important role in the American sporting culture, and college basketball and college football are as popular as professional sports in some parts of the country. The major sanctioning body for college sports is the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA).

Unlike most other nations, the United States government does not provide funding for sports nor for the United States Olympic Committee.

Recreation

Cinema

Nearly every town has a movie theatre (i.e., cinema), and films are still a very popular form of entertainment, although audiences have been declining in recent years.

Parks

Most cities provide free events organised by the local Parks & Recreation Department. These events, normally held at local parks, are free and are aimed at all socio-economic groups within American society. In towns and cities, parks also include playgrounds and room for sports activities requiring teams of 5-10 players each.

Arts & crafts

Americans enjoy a wide variety of artistic and craft endeavours, including painting, pottery, needlepoint, etc. Lessons in these activities are often accessible to the public and are found in the curriculum of American schools. Joining a course can be an excellent way of meeting new friends within your local community

Music

Playing or enjoying music is a major pastime, and music is hugely influential in American culture. Bands tour throughout the US, and if you live in or near one of the larger cities your music needs should be well catered for.

Outdoor activities

Camping, hunting, fishing, boating, hiking, and walking are also very common in the USA and are enjoyed by a vast number and variety of people. Both hunters and those opposed to hunting often love to camp, and the US is home to some of the most spectacular areas of natural beauty.

Sports events

There is a wide variety of sporting events in the USA. American football, baseball, and basketball are Americans' favorite sports, but soccer, hockey, and golf are also popular. There are professional men's and women's sporting team games at large venues. here are also a lot of opportunities to play sports purely for your own entertainment. You can play as part of a league, or in a locally organized “pick up game,” which will be far less formal.

Gambling

Gambling is legal in some states, but it is illegal in others. In states where gambling is legal, you will find casinos (most famously, in Las Vegas).

Clubs and societies

Clubs and societies are most frequently associated with the "upper classes" in the USA, but in fact they are popular throughout all levels of society. Most are centered around a particular theme (a sport or a charity for example), but there are an increasing number of business and “networking” groups. Membership is often an excellent way for new expats to expand their social network. Schools offer an excellent opportunity for students and parents alike to meet new people; PTA

(Parent Teach Association) groups give parents a chance to have a voice within the school community as well as form a network of new friends.

Church activities

The US is a church-going nation, much more so than the UK and the rest of Europe. A large percentage of the population attends regular Sunday services, but many people's social lives involve other church activities, such as choir, youth groups, charity work, and religious retreats. Joining a church can be a good way to meet like-minded individuals. Most towns have at least one church for each major denomination, but Jewish temples, Muslim mosques, and some less common places of worship may only be located in larger cities.

TESTS FOR SELF CONTROL

	Тест топшириги	Тугри жавоб	Мукобил жавоб	Мукобил жавоб	Мукобил жавоб
1	**When did Political Parties first emerge in Britain ?**	at the end of 17 th century	at the end of 18th century	at the end of 16th century	at the end of 19 th century

2	**Which Parties are elected to the House of Commons?**	the Conservative and Liberal Parties	the Scottish National and Welsh Nationalist Parties	the Conservative and Social Democratic Parties	the Scottish National and Labour Parties
3	**When was Social Democrats Party formed?**	in 1874	in 1881	in 1890	in 1836
4	**When did Social Democrats Party make an alliance with the Liberal Party?**	in 1918	in 1891	in 1876	in 1988
5	**How many Parties do obtain seat in the House of Commons?**	only one major party	only two major parties	only three major parties	only four major parties
6	**Who was the first President of the USA?**	George Washington	John Adams	Thomas Jefferson	John Fitzgerald Kennedy
7	**Who was the leader of the Labour Party?**	James Callaghan	Ramsay MacDonald	Aneurin Bevan	Harold Wilson
8	**When did the Labour Party join in the coalition government?**	during war	during peace	during revolution	during develope
9	**Who encountered political difficulties over the questions of**	Aneurin Bevan	Ramsay MacDonald	Arthur Henderson	Harold Wilson

	relations with the USSR?				
10	**When did Labour return to power with another minority?**	in 1930-31	in 1928-31	in 1927-31	in 1929-31
11	**When did Conservatives return to power over 13 years?**	in 1949	in 1951	in 1950	in 1948
12	**When did the elections severely reduce Labour parliamentary majority?**	1950	1940	1951	1938
13	**By what was succeeded Collaghan?**	by trade	by labour	by Michael foot	by Social Democrats
14	**When did meanwhile leadership of the party pass to Neil Kinnock?**	in 1983	in 1987	in 1992	in 1989
15	**When was the Liberal Party formed in Great Britain?**	in the mid 19th century	at the end of the 20th century	in the mid 18th century	at the end of the 18th century
16	**Who formed the Liberal government in 1846?**	Ramsay MacDonald	Lord John Russell	Harold Wilson	Aneurin Bevon
17	**Which country of U.K is called**	Scotland	Ireland	Wales	England

	“country of hills and lakes”?				
18	**What is the meaning of the word ’’loch’’ in English?**	Lake	Sea	Hill	River
19	**When was Edinburgh University founded and which kind of faculty was known to the whole world?**	it was founded 1582 and it is well-known faculty is medicine faculty	It was founded 1528 and it is well-known faculty is engineer faculty	it was founded 1582 and it is well-known faculty is biology faculty	it was founded 1528 and it is well-known faculty is medicine faculty
20	**Where is Bristol situated?**	it is situated at the junction of the Avon and the Frome	it is situated between Glasgow and Strachclyde	it is situated at the junction of the Eiseddfod and Liangollen	it is situated at the junction of the Herrkot-Watt and Yorkshire
21	**Which cities are included in Southern England?**	Yorkshire, Lancshire, Merseyside, Creater Manchester	Kent, Hertworshire, Bedfordshire, Wiltshire, Hampshire	Cornwallshire, Devonshire, Avon, Oxfordshire	Norfolk, Soffolk, Cambrigeshire
22	**What is the nickname of Kent?**	“the garden of England’’	’black country’’	’’the centre of music and songs’’	’’the ground plantation centre of U.K’’
23	**Where does the legislative power of Australia rest?**	in the Parliament of Australia	in the government of Canada	in the Parliament of Great Britain	B, C
24	**When was the Parliament House opened?**	1913	1910	1914	1920

25	**When was Ireland divided into two parts?**	in 1921	in 1979	in 1920	in 1801
26	**When was English Channel first crossed?**	in 1785	in 1875	in 1876	in 1885
27	**Which city was ancient capital of Wales?**	Caernarvon	Glamorgan	Monmouth	Carmarthen
28	**Which city is modern national capital of Wales?**	Cardiff	Glamorgan	Swansea	Caernarvon
29	**Which street is important for London?**	Whitehall	Glamorgan	Swansea	Cardiff
30	**What is meaning of red diagonal cross of Union Jack?**	The red diagonal cross is the cross of Saint Patrick, the patron Saint of Ireland	the red diagonal cross is the cross of Saint Andrew, the patron Saint of Scotland	the upright red cross is the cross of Saint George, the patron of England	all of them are right
31	**What islands and regions comprise British Isles?**	Great Britain, The Isles of Wight, the Orkney, The Hebrides, The Isles of Scilly, the Shetland, The Channel Islands and The Isle of Man;	Great Britain, Wales, Northern Ireland, Liverpool, Manchester, the Channel Island, the Shetland, the Hebrides.	Wales, The Isles of Wight, Northern Ireland, Scotland, Great Britain, Manchester, Liverpool, East-End, Cardiff, Newport.	England, Scotland, Wales, Northern Ireland, Orkney, the Isles of Wight, Liverpool, Manchester Yorkshire.

32	**Who became King Henry VII of England in the 15th century?**	Welsh prince Henry Tudor;	King James;	Saint Patrick;	Julius Caesar;
33	**When the whole Ireland was united with Great Britain?**	from 1801 till 1921	from 1801 till 1919	from 1801 till 1920	from 1920 till 1921
34	**What was the flag of United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland?**	The Union Jack	God save the Queen\King	Saint Andrew;	The Stars and Stripes;
35	**What language did English develop from?**	from Anglo-Saxon;	from Gothic;	from Latin;	from Greek;
36	**What country is known as the Garden of England?**	Kent;	London;	Bristol;	Yarmouth;
37	**What country is known as the Black Country?**	Birmingham	London;	Nottingham;	Yorkshire;
38	**What are the largest cities of Lancashire?**	Manchester, Liverpool;	Norwich, Ipswich;	Yarmouth, Ely;	Peterborough, Liverpool;
39	**What is the main production of Lancashire?**	Cotton;	Wheat;	Rice;	Vegetable;
40	**Where was the first British atomic power**	North-West;	Lancashire;	Yorkshire;	North- East;

	station-Calder Hall built?				
41	**How many parts consist of London?**	3;	4	5;	6
42	**Which part of London is called the center of London?**	West-End;	East-End;	City of London;	Westminster;
43	**What was the ancient capital of Wales?**	Caernarvon;	Cardiff;	Newport;	Glamorgan;
44	**What is the main port of Wales today?**	Milford Hayen;	Newport;	Swansea;	Cymru;
45	**What does call Welsh people themselves?**	Cymry;	Cymru;	Milford Hayen;	Welsh;
46	**Which region is the center of Scotland's fishing industry?**	Aberdeen;	Dundee;	Glasgow;	Edinburgh;
47	**How many students are in Britain's schools?**	There are more than 10 millions students	There more than 9 million students	There are 7 millions students	There are 150 000 students
48	**What kind of examination do children take at the age of 16?**	O level	A level	11 plus	O level and A level
49	**How did a less academic examination**	Certificate of Secondary Education	General Certificate of Secondary	General Certificate of Secondary	A level examination

	call in the 1970 years?		Education	Education	
50	**How many subjects do student of school pass at O level?**	5 Subjects	7 Subjects	3-4 Subjects	5-6 Subjects
51	**How many Independent Schools are there in Britain?**	There are 2.400	There are 2.000	There are 2300	There are 1.900
52	**When does compulsory school begin?**	At the age of 5	At the age of 11	At the age of 7	At the age of 3
53	**What subjects do children learn in Primary School?**	geography, history religion and a foreign language	foreign , history and mathematic	religion and a foreign language	history and religion
54	**Which are the oldest universities of England?**	Oxford and Cambridge	Open university and Oxford	Open university, Cambridge and Oxford	Cambridge and Open university
55	**When was found Cambridge University?**	At the beginning of the 13th century	At the end of the 12th century	At the 13th century	At the 10th century
56	**How many universities are in England?**	There are 45 universities	There are 47universities	There are 57 universities	There are 48 universities
57	**What is the Open University?**	It is teaches by radio, television and correspondence	It is teaches about history	It is teaches only geography	It is teaches by radio

58	**How many members of Senate is in The Congress of the USA?**	100	435	1200	600
59	**What they need to enter a university?**	They need "A" level	They need "O" level	They need graduate college	They need more money
60	**How many of British children are attend independent schools?**	About 8 %	About 10%	About 15 %	About 11%
61	**What is the white House?**	The residence of the President	Historical Monument	The residence of Congress	The US Military Department
62	**Which kind of information was in the Domesday Book?**	list of all the population	lists of taxes for the king	list of captured countries	History of Great Britain.
63	**When did they pass "11 plus" examination?**	After graduating Secondary school	After graduating Primary school	After graduating junior school	After graduating Nursery school
64	**With how many soldiers did Julius Caesar sail in the year 55 BC to Britain?**	12000 Soldiers	13000 Soldiers	12500 Soldiers	12 100 Soldiers
65	**Where did the earliest men live?**	in caves	in the mountains	in forests	in huts
66	**What did the Romans called**	Britons	Romans	Anglo-Saxons	Celts

	the Celts?				
67	**With what did the Celts make things?**	Iron, bronze, tin, clay and wood	Only with iron	With clay and wood	With bronze , tin, iron
68	**What was the named of the Druids temple?**	Stonehenge	Postmouth	Birmingham	Blymouth
69	**Who ordered to build Hadrian's wall?**	Roman Emperor Hadrian	France Emperor Hadrian	Roman general Julius Caesar	Norman conquer William
70	**When did Alfred become king of England?**	871	891	870	781
71	**Which king did got the name "the Great"?**	Alfred	Egbert	William	Harold
72	**After whose death did England divide into two parts?**	Alfred	Harold	Egbert	William
73	**Among who was the War of the Roses ?**	Yorkists and Lancastrians	Yorkists and Romans	Anglo — Saxons and Lancastrians	Romans and Celts
74	**Why did the English Soldiers call the Black Death?**	The epidemic	The war of the Roses	The Peasants' Revolt	The Hundred year's War
75	**When did the War of the Roses end?**	1485	1455	1484	1570
76	**Parliament of Australia**	the upper house, the	the House of Commons	the house of Representative	the Senate, the House of

	consists of……	Senate, the house of Representatives	and Lords	s and the House of Commons	Commons and Lords
77	**What are the state governments of Australia responsible for?**	for education, health, public utilities	for adoption laws	for forming the Parliament	A and B
78	**What is the capital of Australia?**	Canberra	Sydney	Wellington	Ottawa
79	**When is celebrated the Burn's night?**	January 25	February 25	January 26	B, C
80	**When was born Queen Elisabeth II?**	April 21, 1926	April 25, 1926	April 24. 1926	April 23, 1927
81	**How many members in the House of Commons of GB?**	650	655	660	665
82	**How many members in the House of Lords of GB?**	1200	1250	1260	1205
83	**Lord Chancellor sits on the special seat called…..**	the Woolsack	the Wool place	the throne	C
84	**When was found Cambridge University?**	At the beginning of the 13th century	At the end of the 12th century	At the 13th century	At the 10th century

85	**How many universities are in England?**	There are 45 universities	There are 47universities	There are 57 universities	There are 48 universities
86	**What is the Open University?**	It is teaches by radio, television and correspondence	It is teaches about history	It is teaches only geography	It is teaches by radio
87	**Which country is the nearest neighbor of New Zealand?**	Australia	Canada	USA	Africa
88	**New Zealand is bordered by the Tasman Sea on the …**	West	East	South	north
89	**How many of British children are attend independent schools?**	About 8 %	About 10%	About 15 %	About 11%
90	**When were other universities established?**	By the middle of the 20th century	At the end of the 19th century	At the 19th century	By the middle of the 19th century
91	**Which country is the nearest neighbor of New Zealand ?**	Australia	Canada	U.S.	India
92	**When was the capital of United Canada chosen?**	1857	1856	1858	1850
93	**Which city is almost bilingual in**	Ottawa	Toronto	Quebec	Ontario

	Canada?				
94	**What are the territories of Canada within the Commonwealth of Nations?**	Northwest Territories and Yukon Territory	Yukon Territory and Quebec	Northwest Territories and Alaska	Greenland and Lawrence lowlands
95	**When did The United States come into existence?**	1775-83 as a result of American Revolution	1770-80 as a result of American Revolution	1770-85 as a result of American Revolution	1775-85 as a result of American Revolution
96	**Where is the USA located?**	in the middle of North American Continent	in the South of American continent	in the north part of South American continent	in the middle of South American continent
97	**Where is Death Valley situated?**	the Colorado Plateau	Mississippi	Alaska	Hawaii
98	**Where is the capital of the USA located?**	the Potomac River	the Mississippi River	Colorado	Alaska
99	**How many political parties in the USA?**	2	4	5	3
100	**How long is the President of the USA elected for?**	4	5	3	6

BIBLIOGRAPHY:

1. Bill Bowler and Lesley Thompson Timesaver British History Highlights Oxford Cambridge. 2005.
2. Hasan Bakhshi, John Davies, The geography of the UK's creative and High-Tech economies. Nesta, 2015.
3. Janet Cameron, The English-Speaking World. Cideb UK, 2012.
4. Muminov A., Tuhtasinov I. Country Study. Tashkent, 2015.
5. Yakubov I. English speaking countries. Tashkent, 2004.
6. Sportlight on Britain. Susan Sheerin, Jonathan Seath, Gillian White. Oxford English, 1990.
7. World Book Encyclopedia, 1996.
8. Бакирова Х.Б, Хакимов Х.И. Country Studies. Тошкент 2016.
9. Воронцова Е.А., Introduction to Country Studying: The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Nothern Ireland. Барнаул, 2015.

Websites:

10. http://www.uk.ru
11. http://encyclopedia.farlex.com
12. http://en.wikipedia.org
13. http://www.usa.gov

GLOSSARY

Academic Year

The period during which school is in session, consisting of at least 30 weeks of instructional time. The school year typically runs from the beginning of September through the end of May at most colleges and universities.

Accreditation

The US government does not monitor the quality of US colleges and universities, as does the ministry of education in other countries. Instead, the US Department of Education approves accrediting agencies. These accrediting agencies review a school's educational program for quality, and certify that the school meets a minimal set of standards. So it is important to be sure that the schools to which you are applying are accredited by a recognized accrediting agency, since schools without accreditation are likely to be of lesser quality.

ACT

American College Test. A standardized test offered by American College Testing to assess preparation for college. Similar in nature to the SAT. Required primarily by schools in the Western and Midwestern United States.

Alumnus, Alumna, Alumni, Alumnae

Latin terms for graduates of a college or university. Alumnus is singular male, alumna is singular female, alumni is plural male, and alumnae is plural female. Alumnus and alumni are often used in a gender neutral fashion.

American

A US citizen, national, or permanent resident. Used interchangeably with "United States", "US", and "United States of America".

Armed struggle

Fighting with weapons

Asset

An asset is an item of value, such as a family's home, business, and farm equity, real estate, stocks, bonds, mutual funds, cash, certificates of deposit (CDs), bank accounts, trust funds, and other property and investments.

Associate's Degree

The degree awarded for completion of a two-year program at a community college, trade, or vocational school.

B-2 Visa

Tourist visa. May *not* be used for studying in the US.

Bachelor's Degree, Baccalaureate

The degree awarded for completion of a four-year undergraduate program at a college or university.

Bagpipes

Musical instrument with air stored in a bag held under the arm

Bank Holiday

A public holiday

Bursar

The bursar is the office where you pay the tuition bill. The office responsible for bursaries (scholarships) is the financial aid office.

Campus

A school's buildings, grounds, and other facilities collectively comprise its "campus".

Carol singer's

people who sing religious songs at Christmas, often to collect money for charity

Class Rank

In addition to reporting their secondary school GPA, international students may be asked to report their class rank. This is their standing relative to their classmates. It is reported on either an absolute (2nd in a class of 105) or percentage basis (top 5%).

College

An institution of higher education that awards primarily undergraduate degrees. Often used interchangeably with "University".

College Board

The College Board is a nonprofit educational association of colleges, universities, educational systems, and other educational institutions. For more information, see College Board Online (CBO).

Commonwealth

An organization of independent states which were part of the British Empire

Comprehensive school

Providing all types of secondary education day release the system where someone with a job studies for one day a week

Conditional Admission

Admission to the school with the condition that you meet their requirements for English proficiency after arrival. The school may require you to enroll in English as a Second Language (ESL) classes when you arrive.

Continental Europe

The part of Europe that excludes the British Isles

Cooperative Education

In a cooperative education program, the student spends some time engaged in employment related to their major in addition to regular classroom study.

Cosigner

A cosigner on a loan assumes responsibility for the loan if the borrower should fail to repay it.

County

A US government division that is larger than a single city but smaller than a state.

Curriculum Vitae (c.v.)

A resume of a student's education, employment, publications, and other activities. This term is usually used in connection with graduate students and faculty, not undergraduate students.

Deadline

The date when an activity must be completed. Failing to submit an application by the deadline will disqualify you from the selection process.

Dependent

A person who receives more than half their financial support from another, usually a parent or legal guardian. Most often a child or spouse, but occasionally includes other relatives.

Doctorate

One of several degrees granted by graduate schools.

Early Admission

US colleges and universities have two early admission programs, early action and early decision. Early decision commits the student to attending the school if admitted, early action doesn't. International students are generally not permitted to apply under early admission programs.

Elementary School

Grades K through 6.

Eligible Non-Citizen

Someone who is not a US citizen but is nevertheless eligible for Federal student aid. Eligible non-citizens include US permanent residents who are holders of valid green cards, US nationals, holders of form I-94 who have been granted refugee or asylum status, and certain other non-citizens. Non-citizens who hold a student visa or an exchange visitor visa are not eligible for Federal student aid.

ESL

English as a Second Language.

ETS

Educational Testing Service, the organization produces and administers the SAT and other educational achievement tests.

Extracurricular

Not part of the school timetable

F-1 Visa

Student visa for full-time study.

Faculty

In the US, the word "faculty" refers to a school's professors, lecturers, and instructors, not a division or department of the university.

FastWeb

FastWeb (www.fastweb.com) is the largest, most popular and most frequently updated free scholarship database on the World Wide Web.

Fellowship

A form of financial aid given to graduate students to help support their education. Some fellowships include a tuition waiver or a payment to the university in lieu of tuition. Most fellowships include a stipend to cover reasonable living expenses (e.g., just above the poverty line). Fellowships are a form of gift aid and do not have to be repaid.

Fertile

rich soil where things grow easily

FICA

FICA stands for "Federal Insurance Contribution Act", the name of the piece of federal legislation that established the Social Security payroll tax. The

current FICA tax rate is 15%, half of which is paid by the employer and half by the employee. International students on a F-1 or J-1 visa who are non-resident aliens for tax purposes (have been in the US for less than 5 years) are exempt from FICA if their employment is directly related to their purpose for being in the US (e.g., practical training or academic training). Money earned by a J-2 dependent, however, is subject to FICA taxes.

Financial Aid

Money provided to the student and the family to help them pay for the student's education. Major forms of financial aid include gift aid (grants and scholarships) and self help aid (loans and work).

Foreign Student

Synonymous with International Student, a student from a country other than the United States.

Freshman

A first-year undergraduate student.

GPA

Grade Point Average, a weighted sum of the student's grades. Each of a student's grades is converted to a number on a scale from 1.0 to 4.0, and weighted according to the number of credits received from the class. Typically, a 4.0 corresponds to an "A", a 3.0 to a "B", a 2.0 to a "C", a 1.0 to a "D", and 0.0 to an "E" or "F".

Graduate Student

A student pursuing a master's degree or doctoral degree.

Grammar school

A secondary school which teaches mainly academic subjects

Heir

Someone who has the legal right to receive money or property or a title when someone dies

Hereditary peer

A lord who has gained his title by birth

Highlander

A person who comes from or lives in the Scottish Highlands

Interest

Interest is an amount charged to the borrower for the privilege of using the lender's money. Interest is usually calculated as a percentage of the principal balance of the loan. The percentage rate may be fixed for the life of the loan, or it may be variable, depending on the terms of the loan.

International Student

A student who is a citizen of a country other than the United States.

IRS

The Internal Revenue Service (IRS) is the federal agency responsible for enforcing US tax laws and collecting taxes.

J-1 Visa

Exchange visitor visa.

Junior

A third-year undergraduate student.

Letter of Recommendation

A letter written by a teacher to evaluate a student's qualifications and abilities, often included as part of an application for admission to college or in support of an application for a scholarship or fellowship.

Loan

A loan is a type of financial aid which must be repaid, with interest.

M-1 Visa

Vocational student visa for students attending non-academic trade and vocational schools.

Major

The academic area or field of study in which a student's studies are concentrated.

Master's Degree

One of several degrees granted by graduate schools.

Mainland

The main part of a country or continent, without islands

Middle School

Grades 7 and 8, also known as Junior High.

Need Analysis

The process of determining an individual's ability to pay. When ability to pay is subtracted from the cost of education, the difference is the student's financial need. It is synonymous with "means test".

Need-Blind

Under need-blind admissions, the school decides whether to make an offer of admission to a student without considering the student's financial situation. Most schools use a need-blind admissions process. A few schools will use financial need to decide whether to include marginal students in the wait list.

Need-Sensitive

Under need-sensitive admissions, the school does take the student's financial situation into account when deciding whether to admit him or her. Some schools use need-sensitive admissions when deciding to accept a borderline student or to pull a student off of the waiting list.

Nonrenewable Award

An award that is offered only once. This is in contrast to renewable awards, which are provided to a student annually for as long as the student is making satisfactory progress to the degree.

Postsecondary

Any education past grade 12 of the secondary school level.

Principal

The principal is the amount of money borrowed or remaining unpaid on a loan. Interest is charged as a percentage of the principal. Insurance and origination fees will be deducted from this amount before disbursement.

Professional Student

A student pursuing an advanced degree in law, business, or medicine.

Quarter

A division of the academic year into fourths.

Renewable Award

A renewable scholarship is a scholarship that is awarded for more than one year. Usually the student must maintain certain academic standards to be eligible for subsequent years of the award. Some renewable scholarships will require the student to reapply for the scholarship each year; others will just require a report on the student's progress to a degree.

Resume

A one-page summary of an individual's education, employment history, awards, and other accomplishments.

SASE

Self-addressed stamped envelope. Included with a request as a courtesy or to encourage a response.

SAT

Scholastic Aptitude Test. A standardized test offered by the Educational Testing Service to assess a student's preparation for college. Similar to the ACT.

School

In this site, used to refer to colleges and universities.

Secondary School

Also known as high school, grades 9 through 12.

Semester

A division of the academic year into spring and fall terms.

Senior

A fourth-year undergraduate student.

Sophomore

A second-year undergraduate student.

TEFL

Teaching of English as a Foreign Language

Term

Refers to any division of the academic year. The default is into two terms. (In British English the default interpretation is three terms per academic year.)

Test Of English As A Foreign Language (TOEFL)

Most colleges and universities require international students to take the TOEFL as part of their application for admission. The TOEFL evaluates a student's ability to communicate in and understand English.

Transcript

An official record of a student's academic work, including a list of courses taken, grades received, and credits awarded.

Transfer

To switch enrollment from one educational institution to another.

Trimester

A division of the academic year into thirds, adding a summer term to the fall and spring terms.

Tuition

The fees charged by a school to allow a student to register to take courses at the school.

Undergraduate Student

A student pursuing a bachelor's degree.

University

An institution of higher education that awards undergraduate and graduate degrees. Often used interchangeably with "College".